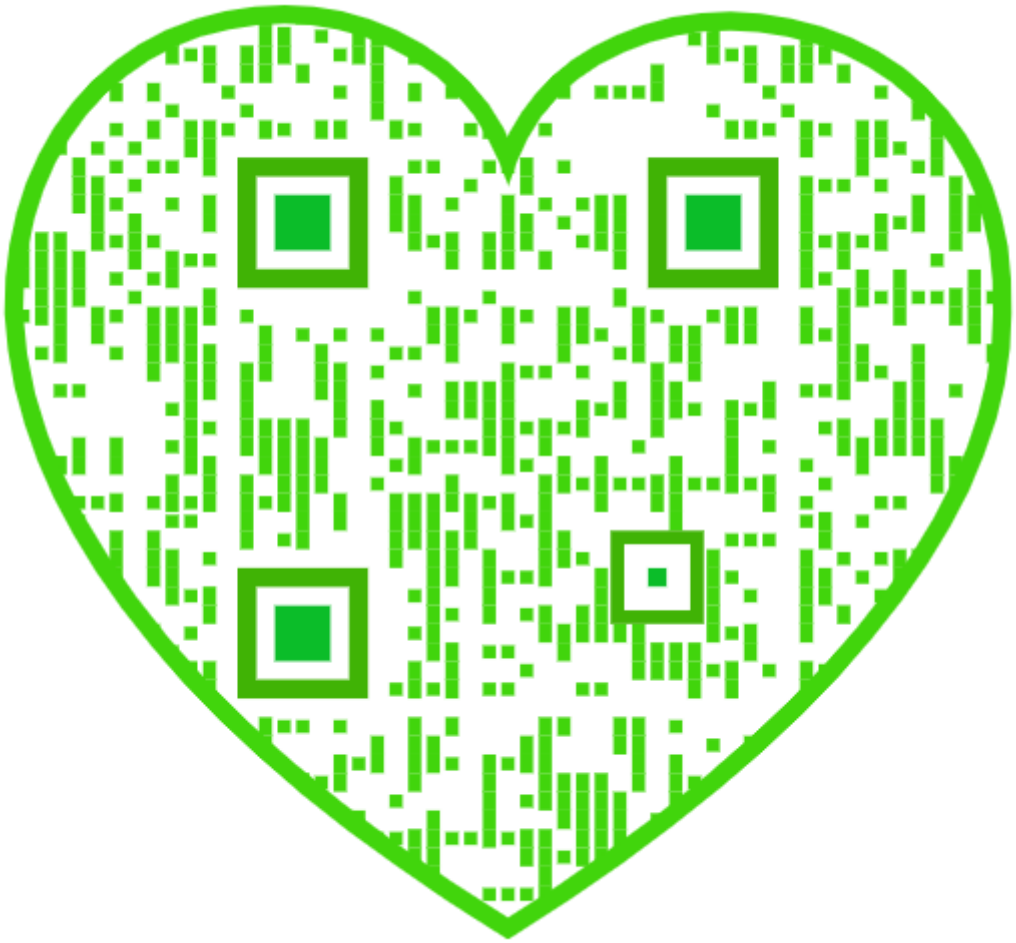
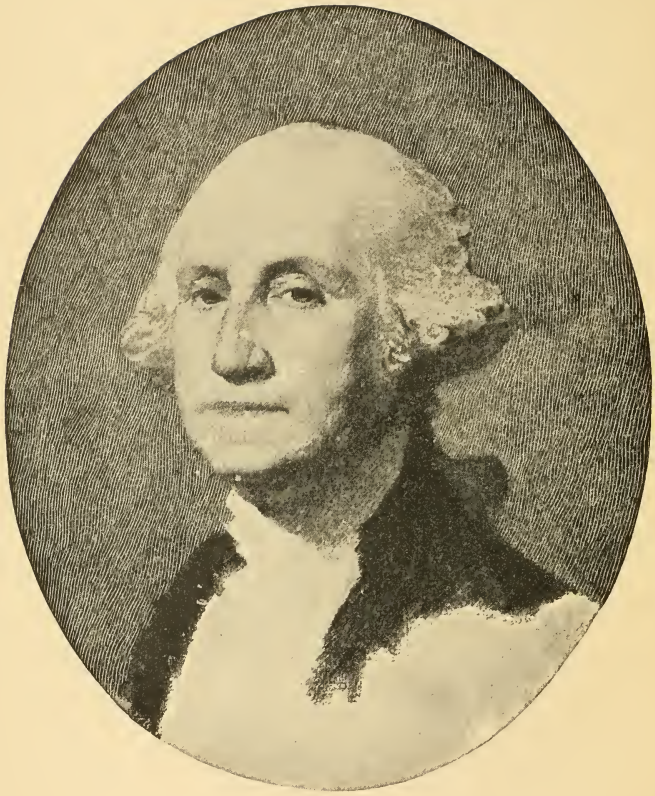


LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
1800
Class E176
Book H69Z
Copyright No.
COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.
FRANZ JOSEF LAND
NOVAYA ZEMLYA
Kara Sea
YUGOR
Obdorsk
RUSSIAN
Tobolsk
L. Balkash
Sea of Aral
CHINESE EMPIRE
Pekin
Kabul
Indus
Hoang
Yang tse
Ganges
Canton
Hongkong
INDIA
Calcutta
Bombay
Arabian Sea
Goa
B. of Bengal
Madras
ANDAMAN IS.
NICOBAR IS.
CEYLON
Bangkok
South China Sea
Singapore
BORNEO
EQUATOR
SUMATRA
JAVA
CELEBES
NEW GUINEA
INDIAN OCEAN
Sea of Japan
JAPAN
Tokio
Yokohama
PHILIPPINE ISLANDS
Manila
GUAM
MINDANAO
LADRONE IS.
MARIANNE OR
CAROLINE IS.
TROPIC OF CANCER
WAKE I.
MARSHALL IS.
Honolulu
HAWAIIAN IS.
PACIFIC OCEAN
PALMYRA
GILBERT IS.
PHOENIX IS.
ELLICE IS.
SOLOMON IS.
NEW HEBRIDES
FIJI IS.
SAMOA IS.
TUTUILA I.
MANUA IS.
PAUMOTU OR
SOCIETY IS.
LOW ARCH
NEW CALEDONIA
FRIENDLY IS.
COOK IS.
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
AUSTRALIA
Perth
Sydney
Melbourne
TASMANIA
Auckland
NORTH I.
Wellington
NEW ZEALAND
SOUTH I.
Dunedin
STEWART I.
Pt. Barrow
Bering Sea
ALASKA
Yukon R.
ST. LAWRENCE I.
ALEUTIAN IS.
Sitka
QUEEN
CHARLOTTE
VANCOUV
MAP OF THE WORLD
SHOWING
UNITED STATES
AND ITS POSSESSIONS
United States Possessions in Red
Scale of Miles on the Equator
0 1000 2000 3000 4000
60 80 100 120 Longitude 140 East from 160 Greenwich 180 160 140

GRANT LAND
GREENLAND
ARCTIC OCEAN
SPITZBERGEN
Melville Sound
Baffin Bay
VICTORIA LAND
BAFFIN LAND
Davis Str.
North Cape
Verdo
Gt. Bear Lake
Mackenzie R.
ICELAND
ARCTIC CIRCLE
Archangel
Hudson Bay
DOMINION OF CANADA
NORTH AMERICA
St. Petersburg
BRITISH ISLES
Baltic Sea
London
Berlin
Paris
NEWFOUNDLAND
NOVA SCOTIA
Portland
Chicago
UNITED STATES
Boston
New York
Washington
San Francisco
S. Diego
New Orleans
Charleston
Gulf of Mexico
MEXICO
Madrid
SPAIN
Lisbon
AZORES
Black Sea
Mediterranean Sea
CRETE
CYPRUS
Cairo
TROPIC OF CANCER
Havana
CUBA
WEST INDIES
Mexico
JAMAICA
HAYTI
PORTO RICO
CAPE VERD IS.
Caribbean Sea
Sahara
SOUDAN
Nile
R. Nile
Red Sea
Berbera
CENTRAL AMERICA
Colon
Panama
Quito
EQUATOR
GALAPAGOS IS.
R. Amazon
PERU
Lima
Pernambuco
BRAZIL
Bahia
Zambesi
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
Rio de Janeiro
MADAGASCAR
Orange R.
Valparaiso
Buenos Ayres
Montevideo
Rio de la Plata
C. of Good Hope
CROZET IS.
FALKLAND IS.
Str. of Magellan
Cape Horn
GRAHAM LAND
C. J. PETERS & SON ENGRS., BOSTON.
120 Longitude 100 West from 80 Greenwich 60 40 20 0 Longitude 20 East 40



G. Washington

A FIRST COURSE IN AMERICAN HISTORY

BY

JEANNETTE RECTOR HODGDON

BOSTON, U.S.A.
D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS
1911

E176
H692

Copyright, 1908 and 1911,
By D. C. HEATH & COMPANY.

© Cl. A 280433

PREFACE

Probably the majority of people, young and old, prefer to study history through the lives of the men who made it. For this reason A First Course in American History has been written in the form of biographies. The book is intended primarily for use as the class text in intermediate grades, and care has been taken to cover quite thoroughly the more progressive elementary courses of history study. It is hoped that children will also find the stories interesting for supplementary reading, and for general reading at home.

One of our best historians has said: "In the teaching of history the pupil's mind should not be treated as a mere lifeless receptacle for facts; the main thing is to arouse his interest and stimulate his faculties to healthful exercise." If this book helps to inspire enthusiasm for patient effort and noble deeds and awakens interest in a further study of history, it will have served its purpose.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	Christopher Columbus	2
II.	Fernando de Soto and other Spanish Explorers	20
III.	John Cabot	32
IV.	Sir Francis Drake	39
V.	Sir Walter Raleigh	50
VI.	John Smith	60
VII.	Pocahontas and the Indians	71
VIII.	Miles Standish and the Pilgrims	83
IX.	John Winthrop and the Puritans	98
X.	Henry Hudson	110
XI.	Peter Stuyvesant	119
XII.	Samuel de Champlain and other French Discoverers	129
XIII.	Robert de La Salle	142
XIV.	Lord Baltimore	157
XV.	William Penn and the Quakers	167
XVI.	James Oglethorpe	180
XVII.	King Philip	189
XVIII.	Nathaniel Bacon	200
XIX.	Benjamin Franklin	210
XX.	Louis Montcalm	225

CHAPTER		PAGE
XXI.	James Wolfe	239
XXII.	Patrick Henry	249
XXIII.	Samuel Adams	264
XXIV.	George Washington	284
XXV.	Philip Schuyler	315
XXVI.	Nathanael Greene	330
XXVII.	John Paul Jones	342
XXVIII.	Gilbert Motier de Lafayette	356
	Pronouncing Vocabulary	363
	Index	365

A FIRST COURSE IN AMERICAN HISTORY

I. CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS

Born about 1436 — Died 1506

They sailed. They sailed. Then spake the mate:
"This mad sea shows his teeth to-night.
He curls his lip, he lies in wait
With lifted teeth as if to bite.
Brave Admiral, say but one good word:
What shall we do when hope is gone?"
The words leapt like a leaping sword:
"Sail on! sail on! sail on! and on!"

Then, pale and worn, he kept his deck,
And pierced through darkness. Oh, that night
Of all dark nights. And then a speck —
A light! A light! A light! A light!
It grew, a starlit flag unfurled.
It grew to be Time's burst of dawn.
He gained a world; he gave that world
Its grandest lesson: On! sail on!

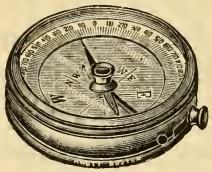
— JOAQUIN MILLER'S "Columbus."

IN order to understand how Columbus came to undertake his great voyage which led to the discovery of our New World in 1492, we must learn of the condition of affairs in Europe at that time.

Four hundred years ago people in Italy, Spain, Portugal, England, and France were beginning to

take a new interest in travel and commerce. This was largely due to the invention of printing, which made it easier to obtain books. Reading thus became more general, and the printed stories of other lands, such as Marco Polo's book, aroused interest and a desire for further knowledge.

This newly awakened interest was due also to the invention of the mariner's compass, an instrument which enables seamen always to know the direction in which they are sailing. The compass is a magnetized bar of steel, called the needle, with its center resting on an upright pivot. The pivot is secured to the bottom of a round box, which is provided with a glass top to protect the needle. As the needle always points to the north, mariners are able to tell the direction in which they are sailing, and to steer their ships in the proper course. With the aid of the compass, and with a map giving a picture of the land and water on the earth's surface, a sailor felt well equipped for his voyage.



Mariner's Compass

So it came about that the nations grew more interested in far-away countries, and in the exchange of goods between other lands and their own. They were eager to seize every opportunity to travel, and to find new routes between Europe and Asia. Above all, they were anxious to find a new and

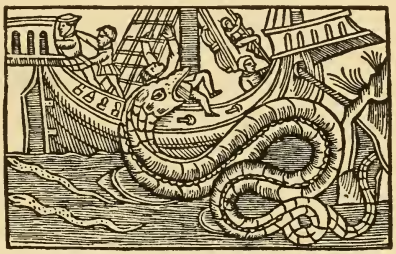
easier way to India and China, whence caravans had for many years brought jewels, costly shawls, silks, spices, and ivory.

Genoa and Venice were the two great commercial centers of Italy. They sent each year into the East large quantities of laces, velvets, corals, and other goods. There were three routes of travel: one by way of the Black and Caspian seas, another through Syria and the Persian Gulf, and a third by way of the Red Sea. But when Constantinople fell into the hands of the robber Turks, these dangerous people closed many of the old roads of travel. Europe then found herself cut off from the rich eastern trade.

Portugal was one of the first countries to try to find a way that would be free from the Turks. These plunderers had no conscience about waylaying men engaged in carrying goods across the continent, and would steal everything they could lay hands upon. Prince Henry of Portugal, the Prince of Navigators, encouraged the men of his fleet to take their ships farther and farther from the shore. The superstitious sailors, however, brought back only weird tales that helped to deepen the old dread of the "Sea of Darkness," as the Atlantic was then called. No man had ever crossed this ocean, and it was supposed to be peopled with dragons and monsters.

While this was the fear among sailors and un-

educated people, a few scholars were gradually coming to the conclusion that the earth was round. "We believe," they said, "that by sailing in a westerly direction from Europe, India may be reached." This, they knew, had been the belief of ancient Greek philosophers, and they had themselves seen ships disappear from view beyond the horizon.



DANGERS OF THE "SEA OF DARKNESS"
From an old picture.

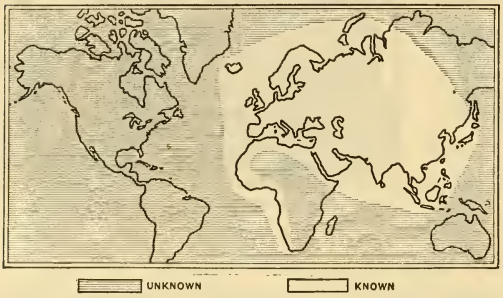
But even the wisest of these men, among whom was the astronomer Toscanelli, had no idea that the whole American continent lay in the supposed path to India. Nor did they believe the world to be anything like so large as it is. When Columbus set out on his voyage he expected to find India only about twenty-five hundred miles away.

Before we sail with Columbus on his long dreary voyage that was to be of such far-reaching importance to the world, let us see how his boyhood and youth had fitted him for so great an undertaking.

Columbus was born in Genoa, Italy, in the year 1436. His father was a wool-comber. As was common with lads reared in cities by the sea, Columbus showed in his early years a love for the

water, and a desire for a seaman's life. In his boyhood he liked to draw, and his father had him taught geography, geometry, astronomy, and navigation.

At the age of fourteen Columbus entered upon his life on the ocean, but we must not get the idea that, because he spent so few years at school, he then ceased to study. His liking for geography led him to give to books and maps every leisure hour that he could find throughout his busy life.



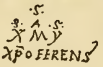
THE WORLD AS KNOWN IN THE TIME OF COLUMBUS

His first voyages were made with a distant relative, a hardy, daring sea-captain, who found that the boy conducted himself with great credit, showing fearlessness and good sense. Soon tales of Prince Henry's expeditions attracted Columbus to Portugal.

By this time Columbus had grown to manhood. He was tall and well-formed, with ruddy complexion, gray eyes, and light hair. He was strong in muscle, dignified and courteous in manner, and deeply religious. It was not long before he married the daughter of an Italian cavalier who had won

distinction under Prince Henry. They had one son whom they named Diego.

He went on various sea-trips to the coast of Guinea, but spent all his hours of leisure in drawing maps and charts. This occupation led him to exchange letters with learned men, among whom was Toscanelli. These letters showed Columbus that the wisest geographers and astronomers believed, as did he himself, that the earth was round, and this belief kept alive his interest in exploration.



COLUMBUS
From the bust at Padua.
Autograph.

Gradually Columbus gave himself up to the one great idea of finding India by sailing westward from Europe. Stories have been told of voyages that he made to Iceland, where he heard of Leif's discovery of Vinland; but the truth of these tales never has been proved. Even if they were true, Columbus would probably have paid no attention to the fact that Leif had discovered new land with a few savages upon it. He was in search of a short route to India and China, the land of gold and precious stones.

But how was Columbus to accomplish this great undertaking? He was poor, and a large sum of money was needed. He was so confident of suc-

cess, however, that he laid his plans before King John of Portugal, who heard them with patience and called a council of learned men to discuss them. But these men came to the conclusion that the Italian's idea was very foolish and deserved no serious attention.

Columbus now turned his back upon Portugal and with his little son Diego set out for Spain, where he tried to interest wealthy nobles in his plans. Meantime he had sent his brother to England and to France to beg aid from the kings of those countries, but they gave him no encouragement. Columbus was now in great poverty; for he had devoted all his time to his great exploring schemes, and had earned no money for the support of his family.

At last a rich Spanish duke advised Columbus to seek aid of King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella; he gave Columbus a letter to the Queen, in which he urged her to give careful attention to Columbus's request. The Spaniards were at this time engaged in fighting the Moors, and so it happened that, although Ferdinand and Isabella listened to Columbus's plans, they were in no haste to act upon them. They called together some of the most scholarly men in the country to talk with him, but, while a few were convinced, others laughed at his ideas and said he was not in his right mind. This opinion became general. When Columbus passed

through the streets, even the children would point their fingers to their foreheads, to indicate that he was a madman.

And so seven weary years of waiting passed. At last, hungry, foot-sore, and heartsick, Columbus set out for France; but he had gone only a short dis-

COLUMBUS ASKING AID OF QUEEN ISABELLA
After the painting by Brozik.

tance when he was bidden to return. While King Ferdinand still frowned upon him, Queen Isabella had decided to give his plans a trial. At a meeting of the court she exclaimed, "I undertake the enterprise for my own crown of Castile, and will pledge my jewels to raise the necessary funds."

The one great desire of Columbus's life was ful-

filled, and he at last set sail from the port of Palos, on August 3, 1492. His fleet was composed of three small vessels, called caravels. The largest, the *Santa Maria*, was about ninety feet long and twenty feet wide. The other two were the *Pinta*, and the *Niña* or "Baby." While these boats were larger than those of the Northmen, it is doubtful whether they were as strong. They were open, with deck amidships, built high at the prow and stern, with cabins for the crew.

Ninety persons in all set out with Columbus on that memorable voyage, and only with the greatest difficulty had these few been persuaded to go. It was the general belief that they were sailing to certain death on the wild unknown waters. Columbus sailed first for the Canary Islands, where he was obliged to remain for three weeks while the caravels were being repaired.

On the 6th of September the fleet made a fresh start, and through the remainder of the month the little boats held steadily on their westward course. Never had the firm, persevering spirit of Columbus been put to so severe a test; for, as the weeks went by without sight of land, the men grew more restless and finally desperate. They begged Columbus to return to Spain, and when he refused they plotted to get rid of him. "He is crazy," they said, "and we are probably lost. Let us throw him overboard and try to find our way home."

"My men grow mutinous day by day;
My men grow ghastly wan and weak."
The stout mate thought of home; a spray
Of salt wave washed his swarthy cheek.
"What shall I say, brave Admiral, say,
If we sight naught but seas at dawn?"
"Why, you shall say at break of day,
Sail on! sail on! sail on! and on!"

CARAVELS OF COLUMBUS
After the model exhibited at the Columbian Exposition, Chicago, 1893.

But what are those objects on the top of the waves? A branch of shrubbery with berries upon it, and a stick that has been cut with some sharp instrument. They must have floated from some

near-by shore. Land *must* be near! All eyes were eagerly strained, and on the evening of October 11 a light was seen in the distance. By daybreak land was in sight.

Early on the morning of October 12, 1492, the admiral, with several of his men, went ashore. Columbus, attired in a rich red robe, proudly planted the flag of Spain on the island on which they had landed. He named it San Salvador (Holy Savior) and claimed possession in the name of the king and queen. He wept for joy and kissed the soil, and, kneeling, thanked God for success.

Soon the voyagers were surrounded by naked savages, who though frightened and curious were at the same time friendly and gentle. Columbus gave them glass beads and other bright-colored trifles, which they joyfully hung around their necks. They never had seen any boats except their own canoes, and they thought the Spanish ships, with masts and sails, were white-winged birds or sea-monsters, and that the strange men had come down from heaven. In the belief that he had reached the East Indian islands, Columbus called the natives Indians. He was, in fact, only a short distance from the Florida coast, on one of the Bahama islands.

The happy sailors were greatly impressed by the rich fruits and foliage of this new land, and particularly pleased at the sight of the gold trinkets which the Indians wore. They were now ashamed

of their behavior during the voyage, and of the anxiety they had caused their admiral; so they gathered around him and begged forgiveness.

During the next few weeks Columbus explored the coasts, but trouble was in store for him. One

LANDING OF COLUMBUS, OCTOBER 12, 1492
After the picture by Dioscora Puebla.

morning the *Pinta*, the swiftest vessel of the fleet, was missing; and worse still, the *Santa Maria*, while cruising along the coast, ran aground on a sand bank and was wrecked.

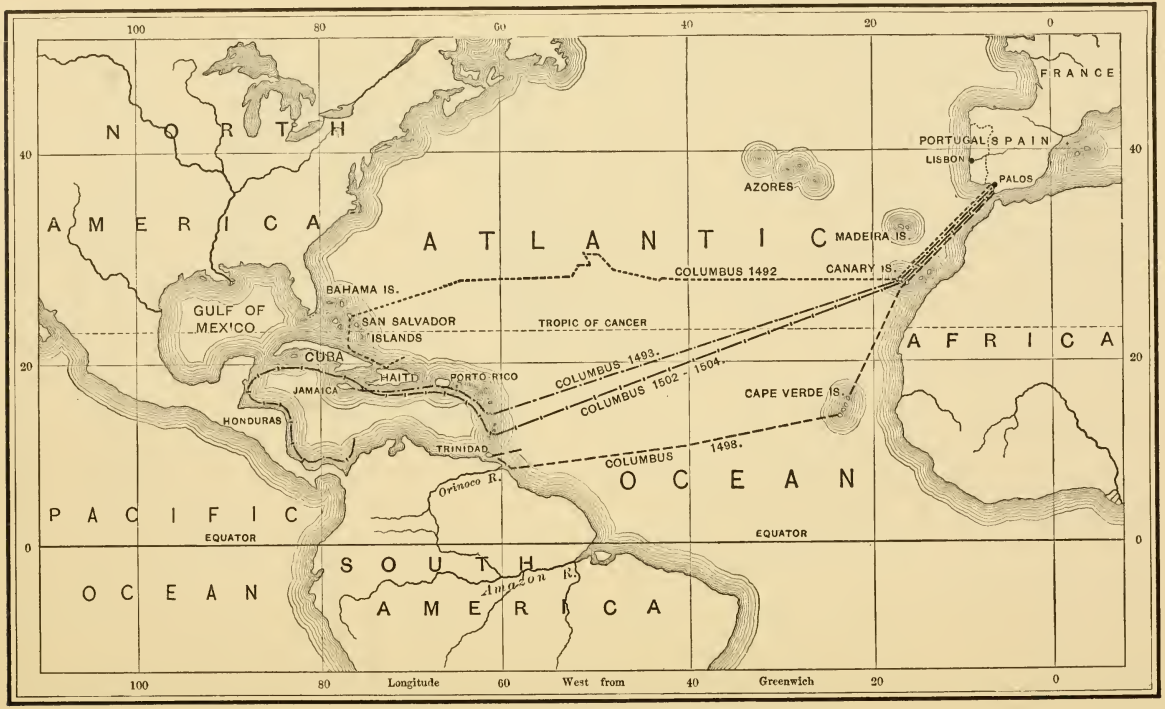
Not all of the men could return to Spain on the little *Niña*, so from the wreck of the *Santa Maria* and other timber a rude fort was built. As much provision as could be spared was left in the fort.

For the rest, the men trusted to fruit and game, and to the kindness of the natives, to keep them alive until Columbus should return. The sailors who were going back to Spain crowded into the *Niña*, and in January, 1493, they began the homeward voyage. Columbus was surprised two days later at sighting the *Pinta*, whose commander had been trading with the Indians for his own profit. To explain his bad conduct he said he had been carried out to sea by the winds.

When the two little vessels reached the harbor of Palos, great was the rejoicing. Business was suspended, bells were rung, and in triumph Columbus was borne to the church, where thanks were offered for the safe return of the navigators. The king and queen received Columbus with great ceremony and showered honors upon him. They were delighted with the tales he had to tell of the new island, and with the strange birds and fruits and native Indians that he had brought back.

Men who had laughed at Columbus now begged to be taken with him on a voyage. In September, 1493, a second fleet was ready. This time there were seventeen ships carrying fifteen hundred men. Again the discoverer sailed westward, expecting to join those left behind in the little fort at San Salvador. But, alas! he found the fort in ruins. Not a trace of the Spaniards was to be seen.

A colony named San Domingo was now estab-



MAP OF THE VOYAGES OF COLUMBUS.

lished on the island of Hayti, and Porto Rico and Jamaica were discovered. Then Columbus returned to arrange for a fresh voyage of discovery, and soon Spain sent more men and ships to San Domingo.

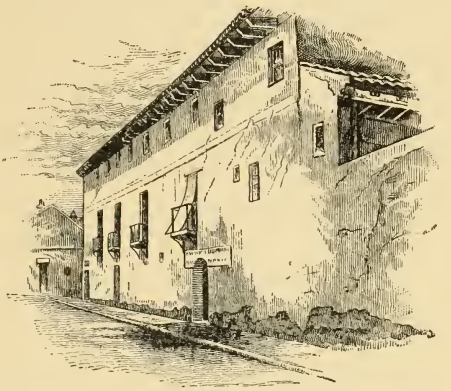
On his third voyage, in 1498, Columbus discovered the mainland of South America, which also he supposed to be Asia. But why could he not find the treasures of India and China? And where was the Great Khan to whom Ferdinand and Isabella had written the letter which Columbus was to present?

The king and queen now grew impatient over the delay in finding the short, safe route to the rich eastern countries. This was the one thing they had expected Columbus to accomplish; for they thus hoped to gain great wealth.

Poor, brave Columbus! He had enjoyed a brief period of triumph, but during his last years he was to know nothing but sorrow. Many were jealous of him because of the great respect that the king and queen had shown him. "What he has discovered is of no use to any one," said his enemies. "He has brought back none of the treasures he went to seek, and the colony of San Domingo is only a source of expense."

Soon quarrels arose among the colonists. One day while Columbus, who acted as governor, was away exploring the coast, a ship hastily set sail for Spain. It carried letters to Ferdinand and Isabella containing false stories of harsh treatment received

at the hands of Columbus. The king immediately sent over a messenger, named Bobadilla, to investigate the affairs of the colony, and to help restore order and good feeling. But Bobadilla wanted the office of governor for himself, so he seized Columbus and sent him back to Spain, a prisoner in chains. At the same time he sent to the king and queen a letter in which many untrue statements were made.



House at Valladolid where Columbus died

When the great discoverer was brought to the court in irons, good Queen Isabella broke into tears and sobbed. She had Columbus released at once, and in 1502 sent him out on a fourth exploring expedition.

But misfortune continued to follow him. Tornado after tornado burst upon his ships and threatened them with destruction. He explored the coast of Central America, fighting fierce gales for many weeks. After one of his vessels had been wrecked and he was reduced almost to starvation, he man-

aged to reach San Domingo. The broken-hearted discoverer sailed for Spain a few weeks later.

The death of Isabella was a sad blow to Columbus. Ferdinand looked coldly upon his claims to the land and money that had been promised him. Hardship, toil, and anxiety had undermined the great navigator's health, and he died at Valladolid, poor and neglected, on May 20, 1506. He never knew that he had discovered a new world, or dreamed that his fame would survive as long as America endures. He had failed to find a passage to the rich countries of the East, and men forgot him, or remembered him only to ridicule him.

It was not until long years afterward that Europe learned of the size and form of the great continent of America, and realized the debt owed to Columbus. Through his discoveries Spain was to reap enormous wealth in gold and silver, and to acquire new lands; and France, England, and Holland were to plant colonies on this fresh soil.

After the death of Columbus one of his friends, Americus Vespucius, a merchant of Florence, was sent by the king of Portugal to the new land Columbus had found. Vespucius sailed along the coast of South America and, after a voyage made in 1501, published an account of what he had seen. This written description of the New World led to naming the country America. It would have been more properly called Columbia.

Things to Remember

Christopher Columbus was an Italian, who sailed under the Spanish flag to find a westward route to China and India.

On this voyage America was discovered by Columbus in 1492. He landed on one of the Bahama Islands and afterward explored Cuba and Hayti.

In 1493 Columbus made a second voyage to America and founded a colony, San Domingo, upon the island of Hayti.

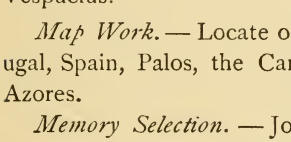
On his third voyage, in 1498, he discovered the coast of South America.

Columbus never landed on any part of what is now the United States, and he died without knowing that he had discovered a new continent.

America received its name from a later explorer, Americus Vespucius.

Map Work. — Locate on a map or globe Genoa, Venice, Portugal, Spain, Palos, the Canaries, San Salvador, Cuba, Hayti, the Azores.

Memory Selection. — Joaquin Miller's "Columbus."


Nunc vero & hęc partes ſunt latius luſtratæ/ & alia quarta pars per Americū Veſputium(vt in ſequentibus audietur)inuenta eſt: quā non video cur quis iure vetet ab Americo inuentore ſagacis ingenij viro Amerigen quaſi Americi terram/ſiue Americam dicendam: cum & Europa & Aſia a mulieribus ſua ſortita ſint nomina. Eius ſitū & gentis mores ex bis binis Americi nauigationibus quę ſequūtur liquide intelligi datur.

Facsimile

Of that part of the page in the book in which the name of America is proposed for the New World.

II. FERNANDO DE SOTO AND OTHER SPANISH EXPLORERS

De Soto: Born about 1500 — Died 1542

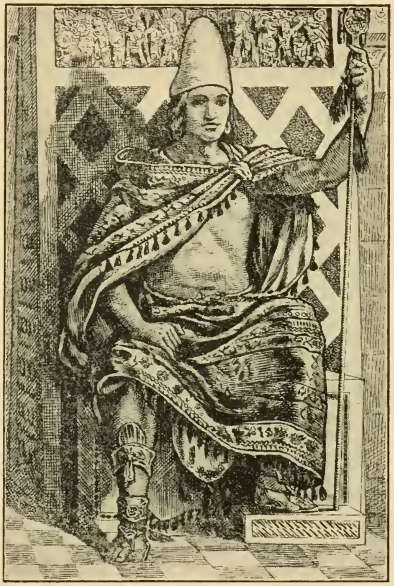
And we came to the Isle of Flowers; their breath met us out on the seas,
For the spring and the middle summer sat each on the lap of the breeze;
And the red passion-flower to the cliffs, and the dark blue clematis, clung,
And starr'd with a myriad blossom the long convolvulus hung.
— TENNYSON'S "The Voyage of Maeldune."

ALTHOUGH Spain had allowed Columbus to die neglected and almost forgotten, she was not slow to follow up his discoveries. She continued to send ships and men to the new shores, and Portugal, too, began to send out explorers.

SPANISH KNIGHT OF 16TH CENTURY

For nearly one hundred years after Columbus's discovery Spain and Portugal had no rivals. Spaniards and Portuguese explored Cuba, Hayti, Porto Rico, and Jamaica, and later Mexico and Peru. Many colonies were established, for in Mexico and Peru the long-looked-for gold and silver had been discovered. Thousands of men now eagerly crossed the ocean and pressed farther

and farther into the interior of these countries. They found them inhabited by powerful tribes of half-civilized Indians, the Aztecs in Mexico and the Incas in Peru, who united in an effort to drive out the invaders.



An Aztec King

Spain sent over men and ships so fast that the resistance of the Indians was useless. The most daring and brilliant of the Spanish conquests were made by Cortez in Mexico and Pizarro in Peru, but the Spaniards treated the natives with great cruelty. By the aid of superior weapons of war they won crushing victories over the tribes in possession; they then seized the rich mines, and thus created a new and wealthy empire for Spain.

While Cortez and Pizarro were engaged in their conquests, other Spaniards were exploring and making fresh discoveries. Ponce de Leon, a brave soldier, had accompanied Columbus on his second voyage, and by 1512 had been made governor of

Porto Rico. Colonists who had returned from adventures in lands north of Porto Rico told wonderful stories about what they had seen.

They said, "Food and fruits may be had from the soil without labor; the barbarous natives are decked with gold and jewels, and the sparkling rivers carry gold in their waters." Among other wonderful things they spoke of a "magical fountain"; the Indians had told them that one might bathe in its waters and become young again.

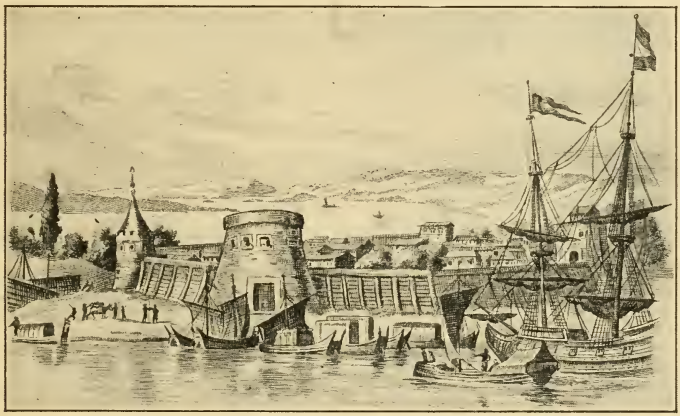
Ponce De Leon

Now Ponce de Leon was growing old, and he thought that if he might find this wonderful fountain, it would be indeed a great discovery. Accordingly he sailed northward, and on Easter Sunday, 1513, his vessel came within sight of a land brilliant with flowers.

In Spain Easter day is called Pascua Florida, "Flowery Easter," so De Leon named the land Florida, and went ashore, probably not far from the present city of St. Augustine. But he explored very little, and he did not succeed in founding a colony. Instead of finding the fountain of youth, he met his death. One of the arrows shot by the

hostile Indians struck him in the thigh, and after suffering from the wound and the hardships of the journey he died.

In the same year in which De Leon discovered Florida, 1513, Balboa, governor of one of the Spanish colonies, climbed to a high peak on the Isthmus



ST. AUGUSTINE, FLORIDA, AS FOUNDED IN 1565
The oldest town in North America.

of Darien. To his surprise he looked down upon an unknown body of water, which he called the South Sea. It was what we now call the Pacific Ocean, and Balboa was the first white man to behold its waters from this side of the world.

In 1519 Magellan, a Portuguese, discovered the straits that now bear his name, and passing through them entered Balboa's "South Sea." (See map, page 55.) Magellan found the water so calm that he gave it the name Pacific.

He continued to sail westward, and finally reached the East Indies. Unfortunately he was killed in the Philippine Islands; but one of his vessels continued the voyage, passing round the Cape of Good Hope, until it reached Spain. There was great excitement when this ship came into port. It was the first vessel that had sailed around the world.

Vasco Nuñez de Balboa

The question of the shape of the earth was now settled. The cruise of this ship proved that the earth is round, and that no sailor need hesitate to sail out a long way on the ocean for fear of passing over the edge. This great voyage of Magellan settled another question; it proved that the land that Columbus had discovered was not Asia.

Ferdinand Magellan

Interest in America now became keener than ever. "Why should not I become as rich as Cortez or Pizarro?" each explorer asked

himself, and in 1528 a Spaniard named Narvaez set out with four hundred men to settle the Florida of Ponce de Leon. But the swamps and the hostility of the Indians were more than the colonists could endure. Out of the whole expedition only four men survived.

These four had a strange and wonderful experience. They were in an unknown wilderness, prisoners of the Indians, and in danger of being put to death. In some way they made the savages believe that their captives were sorcerers, or magicians; so the Indians spared their lives. For eight long years they led this perilous existence, and at last they reached a Spanish settlement on the western coast of Mexico, having tramped over two thousand miles.

In the same year in which the Straits of Magellan were discovered, 1519, Pineda discovered the mouth of a great river, which he named Río de Santo Espíritu — River of the Holy Spirit. It was the mighty stream that we now call the Mississippi.

It remained for Fernando de Soto, a Spaniard of noble birth, to explore the Mississippi River and to make a successful march through Florida. When a boy in Spain, De Soto had been able to outdo his comrades in athletic sports. As he grew to manhood he became a daring horseman and a fearless soldier. He accompanied Pizarro when the latter set forth on his conquest.

De Soto gained great wealth in Peru and showed such bravery and ability that the Spanish king, Charles V, believed he could do much to subdue the Indians. So he appointed De Soto governor of Cuba and Florida, and commissioned him to explore and settle the latter country. Florida then included all the land that is now contained in the states of Florida, Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi.

Fernando De Soto

In 1539 De Soto sailed from Havana with nine vessels, and landed at Tampa Bay. With six hundred picked men, banners flying, trumpets blowing, helmets and lances glittering in the warm southern sun, the conqueror set out on his journey through the wilderness. He followed the coast of the Gulf of Mexico as far west as Mississippi, and he probably went as far north as the Carolinas and Tennessee.

De Soto showed no more mercy to the native Indians than had the other Spanish invaders. Without shame he acknowledged that he enjoyed the "sport of killing Indians." The poor savages were caught, chained together in gangs, and compelled to carry the heavy baggage of their captors.

When they faltered they were driven forward like beasts of burden. Other Indians were made to act as guides.

Once an Indian princess was rowed out in a covered

Map illustrating Spanish Explorations

canoe to meet De Soto. She made him presents of furs and beads, and gave him a necklace that she had worn. But the Spaniard laughed at her; he made her a prisoner, and compelled her to walk with his other captives. It is no wonder that the Indian guides purposely misled their tormentors into

swamps and jungles, and that each fresh tribe that they met proved hostile.

After a fierce battle with the Indians at Mobile Bay, De Soto turned northward, and six months later crossed the Mississippi, the "Great River" of the red man, south of the present city of Memphis. He explored the stream nearly as far north as the state of Missouri. The earliest description that we have of the Mississippi was left by his band of Spaniards. They found the current very strong, the water always muddy, and tree-trunks and branches constantly floating down the stream.

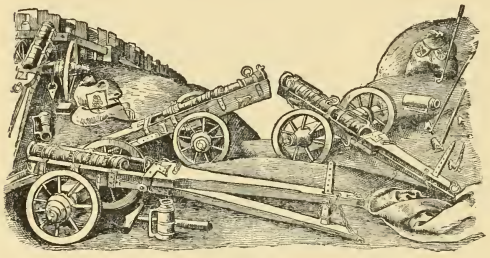
But De Soto, like so many others, was disappointed at not finding gold. He grew weary of marching through the wilderness and fighting savages. So he turned back; but he was never to see Cuba again. Near the junction of the Mississippi and Red rivers he was stricken with a fever and died. In the darkness of the night his companions buried him in the swift waters he had been the first to explore.

Deprived of their chief, the party had now only one question in mind — "How can we get back to Cuba?" In hastily built boats they descended the river, and, after many hardships on water and on land, succeeded at last in reaching the Spanish settlements in Mexico. In three years of wandering, two hundred and fifty men had perished of disease and privation, or had been killed by the Indians.

De Soto's Discovery of the Mississippi
After the picture by W. H. Powell, in the Capitol at Washington.

This was indeed a sad ending of the expedition that had begun so gaily in the hope of gaining wealth and fame.

Although De Soto was the first white man to explore Florida, he did not plant a colony there. But in 1565 a permanent settlement was made by Spaniards at St. Augustine, and that city is the oldest in the United States.



Cannon of the Time of Cortez

We now see that at the close of the sixteenth century Spain could easily understand how much she owed to Columbus. The Spaniards not only had explored the West Indies, Florida, Mexico, and Peru, but had also traveled some distance along the coast of California.

In the year 1600, therefore, Spain was practically in possession of this New World. But she knew little about governing such large colonies as she had planted, and the settlers themselves had only one cry: "Give us gold, more gold." The idea of tilling the soil and making homes never occurred to them. Their only aim was to conquer the natives, and to steal from them all the wealth that could be carried back to Europe. One dream of King

Ferdinand, Queen Isabella, and Columbus had been to convert the savages to the Christian faith, but the Spaniards had almost entirely lost sight of this in the mad search for riches.

Things to Remember

Balboa, a Spaniard, was the first white man to see the Pacific Ocean. This was in the year 1513.

Magellan, a Portuguese, discovered the Straits of Magellan in 1519, and gave the Pacific Ocean its name.

He sailed through these straits to the East Indies, and one of his vessels was the first ship to encircle the globe and prove that the earth is round.

In 1513 Ponce de Leon, while searching for the Fountain of Youth, discovered and named Florida.

Pineda discovered the Mississippi River in the year 1519.

De Soto explored the Mississippi River in 1542.

St. Augustine, the oldest city in the United States, was founded by Spaniards in 1565.

Map Work. — Note the states crossed by De Soto and the route of the escape of De Soto's men.

III. JOHN CABOT

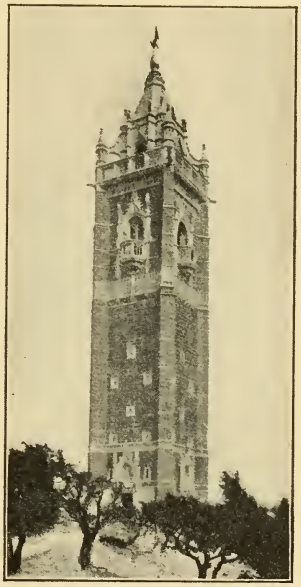
Born about 1450 — Died 1498

The meteor flag of England
  Shall yet terrific burn;
Till danger's troubled night depart,
  And the star of peace return.
Then, then, ye ocean warriors,
  Our song and feast shall flow
To the fame of your name,
  When the storm has ceased to blow —
When the fiery fight is heard no more,
  And the storm has ceased to blow.
    —CAMPBELL'S "Ye Mariners of England."

FIVE hundred years ago there were few books and few persons who could read them. There were no public schools, no railroads, no steamboats or telegraphs, so that people had slight means of learning about places outside of their own communities.

Even after the days of De Soto, Europeans still believed that there was some path of water across America by which they could reach China. So little was known of the geography of the world that correct maps could not be made. The map-makers drew what they knew of the coast lines, and guessed at the rest, and for many years America was put down as an island.

But merchant ships had carried to England news of the attempts of Columbus to find a new route to China. It happened that there was living at Bristol, England, in the days of King Henry VII, an Italian named John Cabot, or as it was spelled in his native country, Cabato. He was born in Genoa, but lived for fifteen years in Venice before he left his own country for England.



Cabot Memorial Tower at Bristol, England

John Cabot was a brave and able seaman, and he was also a successful merchant. He had traveled in Arabia, where he had seen caravans laden with spices and silk, and he longed to visit the far-away islands where such rich goods could be obtained. His son, Sebastian, who probably went with his father on his voyages, says that the news of Columbus's discoveries "kindled a great flame of desire to attempt some notable thing."

So Cabot at length resolved to sail to the far West. The expedition was authorized by Henry VII, and in the spring of 1497 Cabot sailed across the Atlantic with one small boat, manned by

eighteen sailors. "I give you authority," said the king, "to sail to the east, west, or north, carrying the English flag, to seek and discover all the islands or countries of pagans in whatever part of the world."

For two reasons Cabot chose a more northerly route than Columbus had taken; he wished to avoid trouble with Spain, and above all he desired to find the wondrous "Isles of Spice" which Columbus had not found.

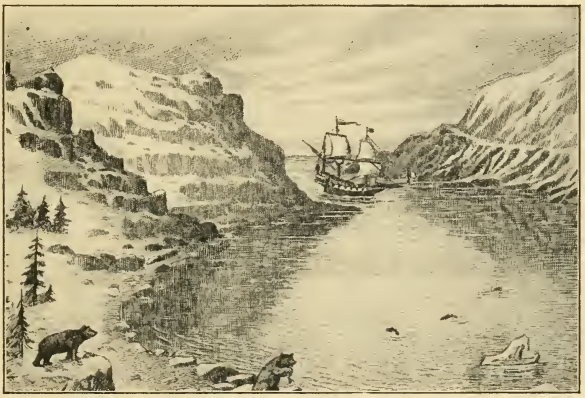
On June 24, 1497, at about five o'clock in the morning, the watchman gave the cry, "Land ahead!" and the Englishmen came in sight of a long stretch of shore. This was probably the coast of Labrador or Newfoundland, and Cabot named it New-found-land. The explorer believed he had landed on the soil of Asia, and in accordance with his instructions he planted the English flag, and said: "I take possession of the country in the name of the king of England."

Cabot now hastened to return and tell of the land he had found. He was greeted with wild enthusiasm, and was called the "Great Admiral." He appeared in public dressed in beautiful silk robes, and a writer of that time says: "The English run after him like madmen."

King Henry presented Cabot with ten pounds, which equals fifty dollars, and he ordered the port of Bristol to pay Cabot a small pension. Thus did Henry think he had repaid the "Great Admiral"

for securing for England a new country. The king wrote in his notebook: "To him that found the new isle, ten pounds." "I have," said he, "won a part of Asia without a stroke of the sword."

The next year, 1498, John Cabot sailed again from England on another journey to these shores. This time his fleet consisted of five or six ships, and



Coast of Newfoundland in Cabot's Time

the route was farther south. Cabot carefully explored the coast of North America as far south as Cape Cod, Massachusetts, but he could not find the desired passage to Asia.

The explorer had with him as pilot a man who had been with Columbus on two of his voyages. This pilot made a valuable map of the shore, and Sebastian Cabot made another. These two maps are still in existence. They were the first ever made of the American coast.

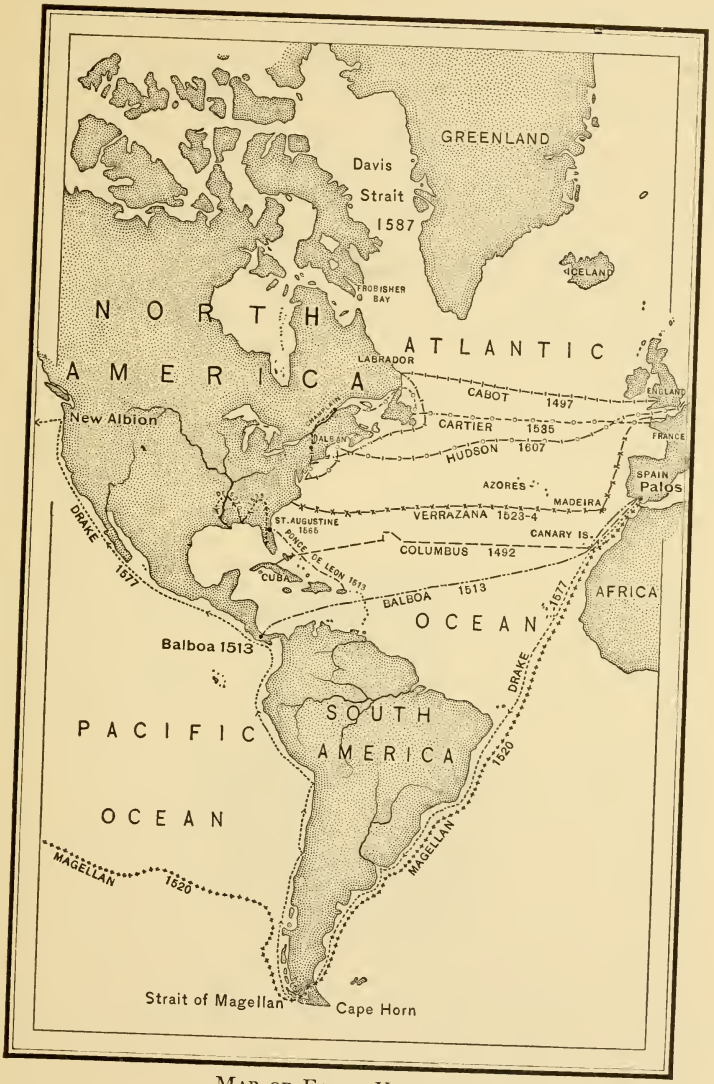
While Cabot in Labrador and Newfoundland in 1498 found the ground covered with deep snow, and the inhabitants clothed in the skins of animals, Columbus was finding in our southern climate a land abounding in flowers and fruits. These things were interesting enough in their way, but both men were bitterly disappointed at not finding rich metals, jewels, and spices.

When Cabot returned to England he reported that he had seen enormous quantities of codfish off the coast of Newfoundland. As Bristol was at this time the center of the English trade for the fisheries of Iceland, this news was very welcome. Fisheries at Newfoundland were at once established and these have grown to be the largest in the world. Nothing is known of John Cabot after his second voyage to America.

King Henry lost interest in the New World discoveries just as King Ferdinand did, and for the same reason; that is, because the wealth of China and India had not been found.

Nearly one hundred years passed before England did anything further in exploring America. When she did make another attempt she found that the voyages of Cabot had been most important. They gave her a right to claim the land that he had discovered and taken in England's name.

As John Cabot's explorations were made before the Spaniards had conquered Florida, we see that



MAP OF EARLY VOYAGES

he and his English sailors were the first white men, after the Northmen, to visit the shores of North America.

Things to Remember

John Cabot, an Italian in the employ of the English government, discovered and explored the New England coast in 1498.

The English were the first white men, after the Northmen, to visit the shores of North America.

Because of John Cabot's discovery, England claimed, in later years, that the eastern coast of North America belonged to her and not to Spain.

Map Work. — Trace the route of Cabot from England to Newfoundland.

Sebastian Cabot
After the picture ascribed to Holbein.

IV. SIR FRANCIS DRAKE

Born about 1540 — Died 1596

And the sun went down, and the stars came out far over the summer sea,
But never a moment ceased the fight of the one and the fifty-three,
Ship after ship, the whole night long, their high-built galleons came,
Ship after ship, the whole night long, drew back with her dead and her shame.

— TENNYSON'S "The Revenge."

FRANCIS DRAKE was one of the greatest English seamen that ever lived. As a navigator and adventurer he was almost as great a terror to Spain as the Northmen had been to England. Let us see what had happened in Spain and in England since John Cabot sailed his little craft into American waters.

On the throne of Spain in 1577 we find Philip II, while Queen Elizabeth ruled in England. Under Elizabeth, England was fast growing in strength, and Spain regarded her as a powerful rival.

Religious disputes had arisen in England. Many of the people were Roman Catholics, while others shared their queen's belief in the Protestant faith. Philip was a devout Catholic and longed to see his

own religion established throughout Europe. "If I could conquer England and govern it myself," thought he, "I could make it a Catholic country." This was one cause that led to war between England and Spain.

There was also another cause. The discovery of the New World had greatly increased the interest in commerce, so that the number of vessels engaged in trade on the high seas had grown to a surprising extent. These were free and easy days, when nations did not trouble themselves about the rights of others. "Let us get all we can, no matter how," seemed to be the motto of the times.

For example, even before war was declared between England and Spain, if an English ship could capture a Spanish vessel filled with treasure, it did not hesitate to do so. The Spaniards also were equally ready to seize an English ship and steal whatever of value could be found. The sovereigns at home never punished the commanders of these pirate ships.

This practice of the robbery of the ships of one nation by another on the high seas, helps us to understand how the adventures of Francis Drake could be possible.

Drake had a cousin named John Hawkins, who was older than he by several years. It occurred to Hawkins, who was a daring sea captain, that he might make a great deal of money by sailing to the

coast of Africa, securing a cargo of slaves, and selling them to the Spanish colonists on the islands of the West Indies.

The Spaniards, however, had a law that forbade foreigners to land on Spanish possessions for the purpose of trade. Hawkins knew of this law, but he knew also that the Spaniards would probably be glad to exchange gold and silver for the slaves, if they could do so without being found out. He therefore took the risk, and succeeded in this way in carrying on a flourishing business.

SIR FRANCIS DRAKE
From the painting at Buckland Abbey, England.

It is said that even Queen Elizabeth was not ashamed to share in the large profits of this shameful traffic; for in those days the buying and selling of slaves was common, and most people saw no harm in it.

When in the year 1567 Hawkins's fleet set sail for Africa, one of the vessels, the little *Judith*, was owned and commanded by Francis Drake. Drake had lived near the sea all his life and loved nothing better. He had worked hard, and now he hoped to

win rich profits from African trade. Unhappily for Drake, however, this voyage of Hawkins did not prove so successful as had his previous ventures. The Englishmen were pursued and overtaken by Spanish vessels, and only two boats of Hawkins's entire fleet escaped destruction. Drake lost everything he had in the world and was obliged to make a fresh start in life.

But he was able and persevering, and in a few years we find him making expeditions to America on his own account. He skirted the shores as closely as he dared, and whenever it was possible for him to make a landing, attack the Spaniards, and take from them gold and silver, he did so. The Spaniards, who never had held back from robbing the native Indians, now found out how it felt to be robbed.

On one of his voyages Drake reached the Isthmus of Panama, and was just in time to seize some Spanish ships about to sail for home with vast treasures. "At last I have my revenge," said Drake; for so much more booty than his boat could carry fell into his hands that he was obliged to leave a portion of it behind.

In the year 1573 Drake was again in Panama and with a part of his crew was marching through the dense woods of the Isthmus. Thick tangled underbrush made it impossible for the explorers to see ahead, so Drake climbed a tall tree and from this

height he could look across to the other side of the narrow strip of land. There lay a great body of water. What could it be? As we know now, it was the Pacific Ocean, and Drake was the first Englishman to see it. About sixty years had passed since Balboa discovered it, and since Magellan had sailed through the straits and named Balboa's "South Sea" the Pacific Ocean. Drake now gazed at it long and steadily. "I hope," said he, "that I may some day sail a ship on those waters."

Spanish Treasure Ship

He did not have many years to wait for the fulfilment of his desire. In November, 1577, at the port of Plymouth, England, five vessels with sails unfurled and spread to the welcome breeze passed proudly out of the harbor. It was Drake's fleet, and his object was to attack Spanish ships on the Pacific seaboard of America. He reached the Atlantic coast safely and succeeded in passing through the Straits of Magellan. No Englishman had ever before sailed on the Pacific.

As the fleet proceeded on its course, one of the ships went to pieces on the rocks, and three others

either turned back or were lost. With his one remaining boat, the *Golden Hind*, and a scant supply of provisions, Drake boldly sailed into the South American ports of Chili and Peru. In the harbors of Valparaiso and Lima, Drake plundered the Spaniards so successfully that they called him the "master thief of the western world." There were no longer short rations for the crew of the *Golden Hind*, but more choice food than they could eat. There was also rich booty for all.

It was not long before Drake heard that a Spanish ship, the *Spitfire*, had just left Panama with an unusually rich cargo. Soon the Englishmen were in hot pursuit. "A chain of gold to the first man who sights the *Spitfire*," said Drake. All eyes were strained as the *Golden Hind* plowed through the deep waters on the exciting chase. At last a nephew of Drake claimed the reward; the *Spitfire* was overtaken, captured, and nearly a million dollars' worth of treasure was put on board the *Golden Hind*.

Drake was deeply grateful for the chance that had led to his climbing that tall tree on the Isthmus. "This ocean brings me good luck," said he; so, instead of returning home, he explored the Pacific coast as far north as Oregon. He spent the winter of 1579 on the shore of California, probably in the present harbor of San Francisco. He named the country New Albion and claimed it in the name of England's queen. When Drake at last left our western coast,

he crossed the Pacific and cruised among the Malay Islands; then he sailed down the coast of Africa, rounded the Cape of Good Hope, and, in the autumn

Queen Elizabeth making Drake a Knight

of 1580, brought the storm-beaten *Golden Hind* safely into the harbor of Plymouth.

This was the second time in the history of the world that the globe had been circumnavigated, and

Drake was the first Englishman to accomplish the feat. On his return, therefore, he was hailed as the hero of the hour. Queen Elizabeth, attired in magnificent robes, visited him on the *Golden Hind*, and the proud commander prepared a banquet in her honor. As he knelt at her feet, she conferred knighthood upon him, so that always afterward he was known as Sir Francis Drake.

The *Golden Hind* was preserved for one hundred years, and when it fell to pieces from old age part of its timber was made into a chair. The king gave this chair to the University of Oxford, where it may still be seen.

Now it was natural that King Philip of Spain should not share the enthusiasm of the English for Sir Francis Drake. To Philip, Drake was a "master robber," and the court of Spain asked Queen Elizabeth to punish him. When no attention was paid to this request, Philip considered that he had sufficient excuse for declaring war upon England. In order to protect the Spanish treasure ships in their journey from the new land to the old, England *must* be driven from the sea. Moreover, Philip thought that if he could crush England it would be possible to keep the Protestant faith from spreading.

Spain was now one of the mightiest powers in the world. She had partly conquered Portugal, Italy, and Holland, and Philip resolved to destroy the English navy also. So he began to build a mighty

fleet of ships to use against the English. The Spaniards called this fleet the "Armada," and the high ships were called galleons.

When news of the Spanish shipbuilding at Cadiz reached England, Drake determined to do what he could to hinder the work, and early in the year 1587

THE SPANISH ARMADA IN THE ENGLISH CHANNEL

he set out with a strong fleet. With his usual daring he sailed close to the Spanish harbor, opened fire, and destroyed nearly one hundred unfinished ships. This feat he called "singeing the Spanish king's beard."

Although Drake's attack postponed the completion of the Armada for more than a year, it was finally ready to start on its errand of destruction. In the summer of 1588 it passed through the English Channel, and on July 29 came in sight of England.

That same night dwellers on the English cliffs overlooking the sea lighted a thousand beacon fires to warn their countrymen that the enemy was approaching. Two days afterward the two fleets met off the Cornish coast.

The huge galleons were arranged in the form of a crescent. The English navy had fewer vessels, but being smaller they were more easily handled, and they were commanded by more daring and experienced seamen. Lord Howard was in charge, Drake second in command, while one division was under Sir John Hawkins, the cousin of Drake. The clumsy galleons built high above the water were an easy mark for the swiftly moving English vessels, which could sail two feet to the Spaniards' one and could fire four shots for every one the Spanish guns sent forth.

On the first day of the battle King Philip's loss of men and ships was so heavy that he knew the conquest was not to be an easy one. The first day of ill luck was indeed the beginning of the end. For a whole week the fight continued with practically no loss to the English. The battered Armada, with sails torn and masts shot away, slowly drifted across the channel, Drake and Hawkins with their English ships in close pursuit. At length a terrible storm arose. Unable to do anything but sail with the wind, the crippled Spanish fleet was forced to go around Scotland in an effort to get back to Spain;

but galleon after galleon was driven ashore on the wild coast and wrecked on the rocks.

After the defeat of the Armada Drake was more popular than ever. In 1595 he and Hawkins set out on another voyage to America. But this expedition was not successful. Hawkins died before reaching Porto Rico. Drake won a few victories, but sickness broke out among his men, and at last the hardy admiral fell a victim to the disease. On January 28, 1596, the English vessels anchored at Porto Bello, and on the same day Sir Francis Drake died and was buried at sea. Robbed by death of its commanders, the fleet returned to England.

Of Drake it was said: "Of such captains as Frank Drake heaven never makes but one at a time, and, if we lose him, good-by to England's luck." Both Drake and Hawkins were certainly among the bravest of England's navigators.

Things to Remember

Francis Drake was the first Englishman to look upon the Pacific Ocean. He saw it from the Isthmus of Panama in the year 1573.

In 1577 he left England with a fleet of five vessels, and in the *Golden Hind* he sailed around the world. He was the first Englishman to circumnavigate the globe.

Drake explored the coast of California and Oregon in 1579, and claimed the Pacific coast for England.

He was one of the admirals in the English navy that defeated the Spanish Armada in 1588.

Map Work. — Trace the route of Drake in his voyage around the world.

V. SIR WALTER RALEIGH

Born 1552 — Died 1618

A wet sheet and a flowing sea,
A wind that follows fast
And fills the white and rustling sail
And bends the gallant mast;
And bends the gallant mast, my boys,
While like the eagle free
Away the good ship flies, and leaves
Old England on the lee.
— CUNNINGHAM'S "A Wet Sheet and a Flowing Sea."

THE hero of this story is the handsome, brave, dashing Walter Raleigh, favorite of Queen Elizabeth — adventurer, sailor, fighter, and courtier. His life was full of excitement and interest. He was the first man in Europe to make a really great effort to plant colonies and found a civilized community in America.

Raleigh was born in a quiet old farmhouse in Devonshire, England, though his father's family had once been rich and powerful. He spent his boyhood near the seacoast. He was fond of boats and sailing; he liked the old sailors who told him thrilling stories of storms at sea; he liked to hear of the battles that his countrymen had fought with the Spaniards. His older half-

brother, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, had attempted to found a colony in Newfoundland about the time that Drake and Hawkins made their voyages to our coast. Young Raleigh had been fascinated by the stories of Gilbert and his friends, and resolved to share some day their bold exploits.

Sir Walter Raleigh

At the age of fifteen Raleigh entered Oxford University. His unusual talent for books and study, his fine face and figure, and his lively, gracious manner attracted many friends. But he longed for a life of action, and at the end of three years left college to take part in a war between Protestants and Catholics in France. He remained in that country for six or seven years; then he became engaged in England's conflicts in Holland and Ireland, and for his services in the latter country Queen Elizabeth gave him large tracts of land.

Throughout these years of foreign service Raleigh

had everywhere shown remarkable bravery and ability, and whether on sea or in camp he found time to read and study, and to write poems and essays. After he returned home his many accomplishments brought him to the notice of the queen, who gave him a place at her court, then one of the most brilliant in Europe.

Here Raleigh's wit, learning, and charm soon made him popular, while his acts of gallantry especially endeared him to the queen. One afternoon while Elizabeth was walking in the palace grounds with her attendants, she came to a place in a path where water from a recent shower had collected. While the queen hesitated, wondering how to cross, Raleigh took off his richly embroidered velvet cloak and spread it over the muddy spot for her to walk upon.

It was Elizabeth's custom to reward her favorites by giving them an opportunity to make large fortunes. She extended to Walter Raleigh the privilege of exporting woolen goods and silks, and of selling wines, and he soon became a wealthy man. This enabled him to gratify his love for fine attire. Even the long plume which he wore in his hat was set with precious gems, and his shoe buckles sparkled with costly jewels.

It was not until near the close of the sixteenth century that the people of Europe came to America for any other purpose than to find gold and silver.

Gilbert and Raleigh desired to plant colonies in America for other reasons. Their idea was to build houses, cultivate the ground, and establish a farming community, to which England might send her laborers who could find no work at home. These colonies, Raleigh hoped, would "put a bridle on the king of Spain," by taking for England a part of the new land, and establishing on this side of the water additional trading points for England.

Queen Elizabeth of England

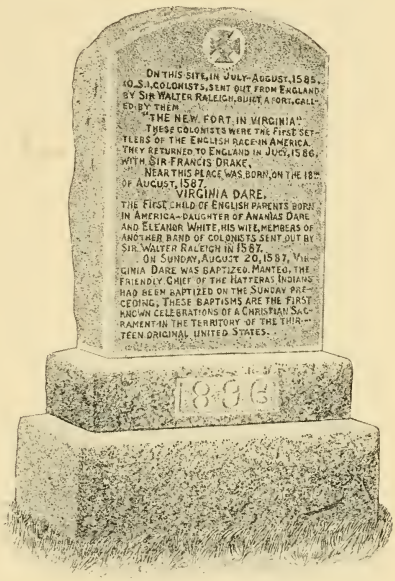
When Sir Humphrey Gilbert died in shipwreck without having succeeded in founding a colony, Raleigh took up the work. The queen turned over to him, in 1584, the charter that she had granted to Gilbert. This gave him "the right to lay claim to any land in the west not actually possessed by a Christian." The charter made Raleigh

governor of all the colonies he might establish; and it gave to the settlers the freedom and privileges that they enjoyed at home.

In the year 1584 Walter Raleigh sent out an expedition that explored Albemarle and Pamlico sounds on the coast of what is now called North Carolina, but he did not go with it himself. The two commanders of the fleet brought back glowing reports of the climate and country, — the balmy air, fine rivers and harbors, fruit, fish, and game. Elizabeth was so pleased that she knighted Raleigh, and gave to the new land the name of Virginia. This was in her own honor; for, never having married, she was called the virgin or maiden queen.

The next year Raleigh sent out seven more vessels, which landed at Roanoke Island. A colony was planted, but owing to scarcity of food and the hostility of the Indians only part of the men survived. Doubtless all would have gone well had the emigrants treated the natives with the kindness that Drake and Hawkins showed them. But some of the newcomers were idle, overbearing men, who supposed they could treat the redskins as outrageously as they pleased. This was a dangerous experiment, as the English found to their sorrow. After suffering great hardships the few surviving colonists were taken home by a passing ship belonging to the fleet of Sir Francis Drake.

This failure would have led some men to give up the idea of planting colonies in America, but Raleigh had great perseverance and did not easily lose heart. In the spring of 1587 he once more sent out an expedition, which this time included women and children. It was under the command of Captain John White. Not long after the arrival of the colonists at Roanoke the first English child was born in the United States. The little one was the granddaughter of Captain White and was named Virginia. Quite recently a stone has been set up at Roanoke, commemorating the site of this first settlement. It states that near this stone Virginia Dare was baptized on Sunday, August 20, 1587, and that on the Sunday preceding a friendly Indian chief had been baptized.


ON THIS SITE, IN JULY-AUGUST, 1585,
108 ENGLISH COLONISTS, SENT OUT FROM ENGLAND
BY SIR WALTER RALEIGH, BUILT A FORT, CALLED BY THEM
"THE NEW FORT IN VIRGINIA".
THESE COLONISTS WERE THE FIRST SETTLERS OF THE ENGLISH RACE IN AMERICA.
THEY RETURNED TO ENGLAND IN JULY, 1586,
WITH SIR FRANCIS DRAKE.
NEAR THIS PLACE WAS BORN, ON THE 18TH
OF AUGUST, 1587,
VIRGINIA DARE,
THE FIRST CHILD OF ENGLISH PARENTS BORN
IN AMERICA—DAUGHTER OF ANANIAS DARE
AND ELEANOR WHITE, HIS WIFE, MEMBERS OF
ANOTHER BAND OF COLONISTS SENT OUT BY
SIR WALTER RALEIGH IN 1587.
ON SUNDAY, AUGUST 20, 1587, VIRGINIA DARE WAS BAPTIZED. MANTEO, THE
FRIENDLY CHIEF OF THE HATTERAS INDIANS
HAD BEEN BAPTIZED ON THE SUNDAY PRECEDING. THESE BAPTISMS ARE THE FIRST
KNOWN CELEBRATIONS OF A CHRISTIAN SACRAMENT IN THE TERRITORY OF THE THIRTEEN ORIGINAL UNITED STATES.
1896
MONUMENT AT OLD FORT RALEIGH

Captain White saw the colonists snugly housed in strong huts and well stocked with provisions; then he set sail for England to report to Raleigh

the success of his venture. But, alas, just at this time Sir Walter, and in fact all England, was preparing for the fight with the Spanish Armada. The little settlement on the distant Atlantic coast was lost sight of in England's struggle to conquer her great rival. So a long time passed before White could be provided with more ships and men.

Finally, after two years, Captain White returned to America, but a bitter disappointment awaited him, for no sign of the poor colonists remained. Either they had died of starvation or had been murdered by Indians, and little Virginia Dare was never heard of again. The only thing found that would even suggest that Englishmen had lived at Roanoke was the single word "Croatoan" carved on the bark of a tree. This was the name of an island not far away, so a careful search was made there for the missing settlers, but no trace of them ever came to light.

Deeply discouraged, but not entirely disheartened, Raleigh continued to send out fresh expeditions to search the wilderness for some clew to his lost colony. The greater part of his large fortune was spent in unsuccessful efforts to establish a settlement in this country.

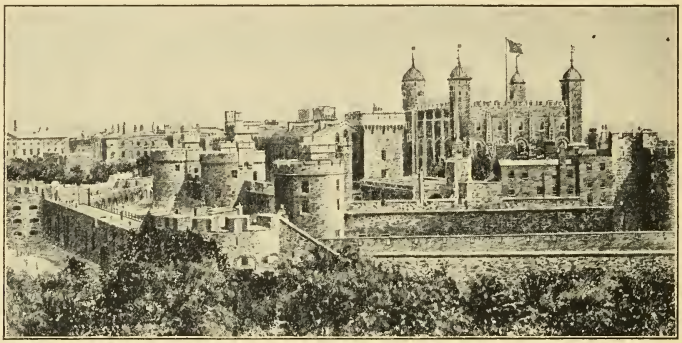
One important result of his endeavors was the introduction into England of potatoes and tobacco, neither of which had been previously known there. The emigrants who lived to return from Virginia

brought back a certain "root," as they called the potato. They had either discovered for themselves, or had been shown by the Indians, that this root might be boiled or roasted to make nourishing food. Raleigh planted the potato in the garden of his estate near Cork, Ireland, and its use as a vegetable spread over Europe.

It is doubtful, however, if men were as much excited over the discovery of this new food as over the Indian herb which they soon learned to smoke. An English scholar who had gone out with one of Raleigh's fleets, brought back not only tobacco but a few of the Indians' clay pipes. Sir Walter had a silver pipe made after the Indian pattern, and an amusing story is told of his first effort to enjoy it. He was sitting by the fire puffing great whiffs of smoke, when a servant entered the room with a mug of ale. Seeing the smoke and thinking that Raleigh was on fire, he flung the ale over the head of his astonished master.

After the year 1592 Raleigh gave up his attempt to plant a colony in America. Although Elizabeth was in many respects a great queen, and though she professed warm admiration for Raleigh, she was often harsh in her treatment of him. Once she ordered him imprisoned in the Tower of London, and after his release refused to allow him to present himself at court. This was a great grief to Raleigh, but he did not lose his courage. The sea was always call-

ing him, and since he could no longer afford to send colonies to America, he organized an expedition to explore the coast of Guiana. He ascended the Orinoco River for many miles. At Trinidad



THE TOWER OF LONDON

the Englishmen tasted their first pineapple, which they called the " Prince of Fruits."

Raleigh was generally loved and admired, but some were jealous of him. After Elizabeth died and James I ruled in her place, these old enemies conspired against Sir Walter and urged the king to put him to death. Once more the valiant Raleigh was committed to the gloomy Tower, where he was held a prisoner for thirteen years. He occupied the dreary days of his long confinement in writing an important book, " The History of the World."

In the palace yard of Westminster, Raleigh was beheaded on October 19, 1618. To such an ignoble end did King James condemn a great man whose

brilliant record in the struggle against the Spanish Armada, and in other services to his country, entitled him to respect and honor. In St. Margaret's church, near Westminster Abbey, a memorial has been placed to Raleigh's memory. We may to-day read thereon that this brave man "laid the corner-stone of the American Republic."

Raleigh lived to hear of the fulfillment of his great desire to "plant an English nation in America," but the news was brought to him when he was in prison. Although his own efforts had been unsuccessful, they led to other attempts that resulted in the foundation of an English-speaking nation in America. Long years after his death North Carolina named her capital *Raleigh* in his honor.

Things to Remember

Sir Walter Raleigh's great desire was to plant an English nation in America.

He was the first man who made persistent efforts to found a colony in America for any purpose except the finding of gold and silver.

Raleigh's first colony was planted at Roanoke, North Carolina, in 1585.

Virginia Dare, born in North Carolina in 1587, was the first English child born in America.

Sir Walter Raleigh's efforts to establish a colony failed, but they led others to make attempts that were successful.

It is said of Raleigh that "he laid the corner-stone of the American Republic."

Map Work. — Locate Devonshire and Roanoke.

VI. JOHN SMITH

Born 1580 — Died 1631

Bless then, our God, the new-yoked plow
And the good beasts that draw,
And the bread we eat in the sweat of our brow
According to thy Law.
After us cometh a multitude —
Prosper the work of our hands,
That we may feed with our land's food
The folk of all our lands.

— KIPLING'S "The Settler."

IT was more than one hundred years after John Cabot made his discovery of American shores, and twenty-two years after Raleigh tried to found a colony at Roanoke, before an English settlement took root and flourished in the New World. This was at Jamestown, Virginia, and the year in which it was begun was 1607. Jamestown, therefore, was the first permanent settlement made by Englishmen in the United States. It survived a desperate struggle against starvation and Indian attacks, and the man who more than any one else helped to keep it alive was John Smith.

The days of England's courtiers and adventurers were drawing to an end, and Smith was one of the last. His life was filled with so many bold

exploits and hairbreadth escapes that he makes a picturesque and interesting figure in our early history.

John Smith was born in Lincolnshire, England, and, as he was early attracted by a life of activity and danger, he joined in the war then raging in Holland. It has been said of him that he could not hear of a fight going on anywhere in the world without taking a hand in it; so we are not surprised to find him next in Hungary fighting the Turks.

CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH
From an engraving in his "Description of New England."

Once he was taken prisoner and thrown overboard from a ship, but escaped by swimming to land. At another time he was robbed, bound, and thrown into a deep wood to die, but again he managed to escape. When he finally reached England he heard that another attempt was to be made to do in America the work that Sir Walter Raleigh had failed in doing, and Smith at once became interested in the project.

The experiments made by Raleigh and others

had proved that planting colonies in America would be a very expensive undertaking. England, however, was not willing to allow Spain to have all this new country; for the idea still prevailed that rich treasures might easily be found in America.

With this fond hope in mind a body of merchants in London in 1605 formed themselves into an organization known as the London Company. They procured from King James a charter giving them the right to establish colonies anywhere in America between Cape Fear and the Potomac River. This royal grant stated that the religion of the settlers must be that of the Church of England, that they were to treat the natives kindly, and "use all means in their power to draw them to the true knowledge and love of God."

In fitting out the first expedition of the London Company, Captain John Smith took an active part, and when in the winter of 1606 three ships set sail from England, Smith was among the one hundred and five men who turned their faces toward Virginia.

The Atlantic was safely crossed and the colonists reached Virginia early in 1607. They entered Chesapeake Bay and before landing sailed for thirty miles up a broad and beautiful river. This they named the James in honor of their king, and for the same reason the little settlement was called Jamestown.

But England had not yet learned what kind of men were needed for a successful settlement in the wilderness, where trees must be cut down, houses built, and all kinds of rough work done. Instead of carpenters and laborers, the colony consisted largely

How the Colonists built their New Homes

of men who called themselves "gentlemen," who had been led to come over by the desire for gold.

The colonists lacked many tools that would have been of great service in tilling the soil, but there were plenty of pickaxes for digging precious metals. The settlers were so confident that these were plentiful in Virginia, that they sent a ship load of yellow dirt back to England in the vain hope that it might turn out to be gold.

At first Captain John Smith paid little attention

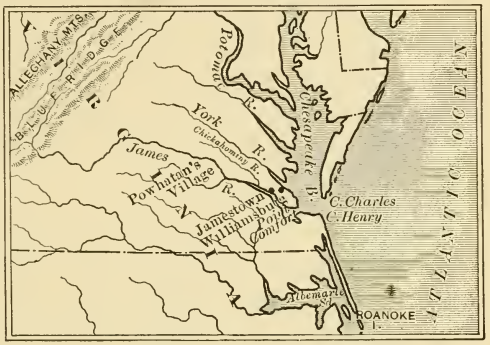
to the management of the settlement, although he was one of the council selected to govern the colony. But as the months passed it became plain that somebody would have to take charge and make new laws, or all the colonists would perish from hunger and the hostility of the savages. As there seemed to be no one else willing or capable, Smith came forward, was chosen governor, and assumed full command.

One of his first acts was to make the wise rule, "He who will not work shall not eat." As all provisions were kept in a common storehouse, where each one had to apply for his food, this rule was easily enforced. It had been the custom for the men to help themselves to whatever remained of the scanty store, but now this was changed. Smith taught the "gentlemen" to use tools, and to cultivate the land; and he made them build log houses and fortifications for protection against assaults of the savages.

With a few of his men he explored the Chickahominy River, and traded beads and trinkets with the Indians for corn to feed the half-starved colonists. He still clung to a belief that the Pacific Ocean was not far away, and that he was likely at any time to find it.

While he was out on one of these trading and exploring trips, Smith fell into the hands of hostile savages who were ready to put him to death. But he had had too much experience in danger-

ous positions to lose his wits. He quickly drew from his pocket a compass and showed his captors the trembling needle that always points to the north. This queer little instrument, so different from anything the natives had ever seen, aroused their childlike wonder. Their curiosity got the better of their thirst for blood, and Smith was taken from one Indian village to another and exhibited to the astonished savages.



VIRGINIA IN EARLY DAYS

One day, finding himself not far from Jamestown, John Smith wrote on a piece of paper an account of his condition, and directed the Indians to carry it to the little settlement. The savages learned to their great surprise that when the white people had looked at the paper they knew all that had happened. This "talking on paper" appeared to their simple minds as one of the greatest of wonders, and made them think more highly than ever of their captive.

The Indian tribes into whose hands Smith had fallen had a powerful chief called Powhatan. In

one of the books that Captain Smith wrote long afterward, he told how his life was saved by Powhatan's daughter, Pocahontas, a little Indian maiden about twelve years of age. The savages had at last grown tired of their white prisoner and had decided to kill him. The head of the unhappy Englishman was placed on a block and an Indian stood over him ready to strike the fatal blow. Just at that moment Pocahontas rushed forward, and with tears streaming down her cheeks begged her father to spare the white man's life, and the old chieftain, with whom the little maid was a great favorite, ordered the prisoner to be released.

Smith finally succeeded in reaching Jamestown, which had suffered many hardships during his absence. The little settlement was to undergo much more suffering before it became established beyond fear of failure. This, as we have seen, was in a large measure due to the kind of men the settlers were. Smith says of them in his history that they were "better fitted to spoil a community than to begin or help maintain one."

Even with the aid of food that Captain Smith was able to get from the Indians, and the fish that could be caught, there were not enough provisions to go around. The river water was not fit to drink, and malaria lurked in the surrounding marshes. Fever broke out, many died, and one hard winter the colonists were forced to eat their horses and dogs.

Even by resorting to such extreme measures, there were times when the living were too ill and weak to bury the dead.

POCAHONTAS SAVING JOHN SMITH'S LIFE

From "A General History of Virginia," by Captain John Smith. London, 1626.

Fortunately for the new settlers, more and more people in England were beginning to take an interest in the project of founding a colony in America. At last the settlers were rejoiced to see a ship load of men sailing up the James River. Soon other ships came, and some of them brought women and children.

More houses were built, more seeds were planted, and the little colony was firmly established.

In 1609 Captain Smith returned to England, partly because of an accident, and partly because some of the new arrivals were jealous of him, wishing to become governor in his place. So they invented charges against him and thus found an excuse for sending him back.

The charges came to nothing, but Smith never returned to the Jamestown settlement, though he made several voyages to America for the purpose of exploring the coast. He gave the name New England to the shores that he explored, and he carried on a profitable trade with the natives in fish and furs. His maps of the coast of Chesapeake Bay and of New England were so nearly correct that they were in use for more than one hundred years.

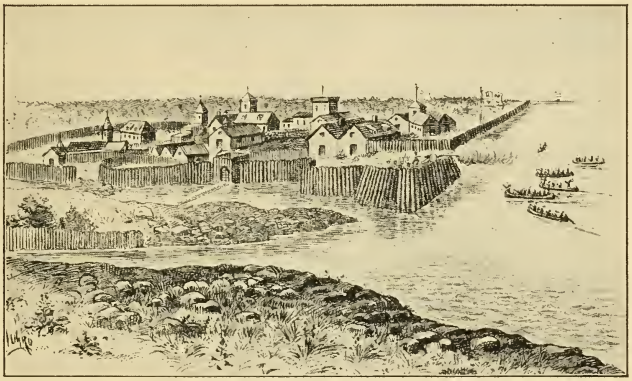
The books written in his later days by this able Englishman are very interesting. His descriptions of America were so enthusiastic that they helped to attract many emigrants to these shores.

After a life crowded with adventure on land and sea, Captain John Smith died in London when not much more than fifty years of age, and his body lies buried in the church of St. Sepulchre.

In the year 1619 there were four thousand colonists in Virginia. The leaders in the colony, desiring to manage their own affairs, appealed to the London Company for permission to elect repre-

sentatives or "burgesses," to form an assembly to make laws for the colony. The request was readily granted and in 1619, in the choir of the little church at Jamestown, the first law-making body in America met. This assembly was afterward called the House of Burgesses.

We shall learn a little later how this first settlement



JAMESTOWN IN 1622
After a drawing made by Anthony Chester in 1622.

in America came to be burned to the ground. There is now nothing left of Jamestown but a crumbling wall, but the work that Captain Smith and his companions began did not perish. As we continue to study, we shall learn how from the humble beginning at Jamestown, Virginia grew into a rich and prosperous state, and of how much service the Virginians have been in the history of our country.

Things to Remember

The first permanent English colony in America was planted in 1607.

It was at Jamestown, Virginia.

The leading man among the founders was Captain John Smith.

The planting of the colony at Jamestown was the first step in founding the American nation.

The first law-making body in America met in Jamestown in 1619.

Map Work. — Locate Jamestown, Chickahominy River, Chesapeake Bay.

A
DESCRIPTION
of *New England:*
OR
THE OBSERVATIONS, AND
diſcoueries, of Captain *Iohn Smith* (Admirall
of that Country) in the North of *America*, in the year
of our Lord 1614: *with the ſucceſſe of ſixe Ships,*
that went the next yeare 1615; *and the*
accidents befell him among the
French men of warre.

With the proofe of the preſent benefit this
Countrey affoords: whither this preſent yeare,
1616, *eight voluntary Ships are gone*
to make further tryall.

At LONDON
Printed by *Humfrey Lownes*, for *Robert Clerke*; and
are to be ſould at his houſe called the Lodge,
in Chancery lane, ouer againſt Lin-
colnes Inne. 1616.

Facsimile of the Title-page of a Book which John Smith wrote

VII. POCAHONTAS AND THE INDIANS

Pocahontas: Born about 1596 — Died 1617

Who will shield the fearless heart?
  Who avert the murderous blade?
From the throng, with sudden start,
  See, there springs an Indian maid.
Quick she stands before the knight;
  "Loose the chain, unbind the ring;
  I am daughter of the King,
And I claim the Indian right!"

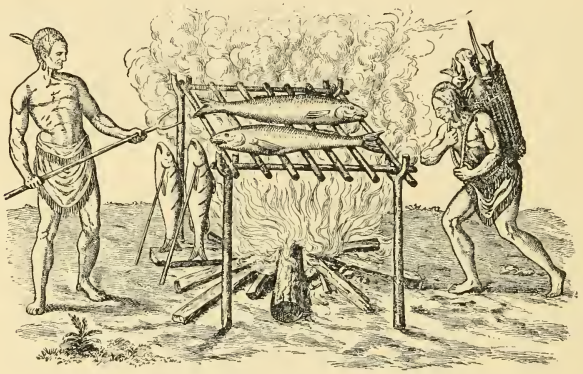
Dauntlessly aside she flings
  Lifted ax and thirsty knife;
Fondly to his heart she clings,
  And her bosom guards his life!
In the woods of Powhatan
  Still 'tis told by Indian fires,
  How a daughter of their sires
Saved the captive Englishman.

— THACKERAY'S "Pocahontas."

IN the greater part of what we now call the United States, before the white people came to disturb their habits, the savages lived a roving, primitive life in the forest and along the banks of streams, with only wigwams for shelter. We already know that the Northmen called the savages Skraelings, because they thought them inferior to Europeans, and that five hundred years later Columbus named

them Indians, thinking that he had reached the East Indies. Sometimes the white people spoke of them as redskins, for they were reddish brown in color.

The Indians were a tall, straight, fearless race of men, with small black eyes, high cheek bones, and coarse black hair. They liked to decorate their

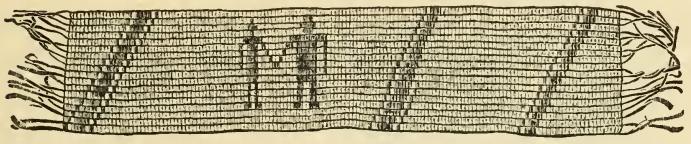


INDIANS BROILING FISH
After a drawing made in 1588 by John White.

faces and bodies with bright-colored paints, using certain colors in times of war and others for feasts and festivals. Each warrior allowed one lock of his hair to grow long. This was the "scalp lock," which he was proud to adorn with eagles' feathers as tokens of his bravery. The chiefs sometimes wore a head-dress of feathers that reached nearly to the ground.

What little clothing they needed for warmth and protection they made from the skins of animals.

On their feet they wore deerskin moccasins which the squaws trimmed with bright-colored embroidery, and with beadwork that was often very beautiful. The beads were tiny pieces of white and purple sea-shells strung upon strips of bark of the slippery elm tree, or on the sinews of deer. The Indians wore long strings of beads about their waists and necks and arms, and also used them for "wampum" or money. Sometimes many strings were joined to-



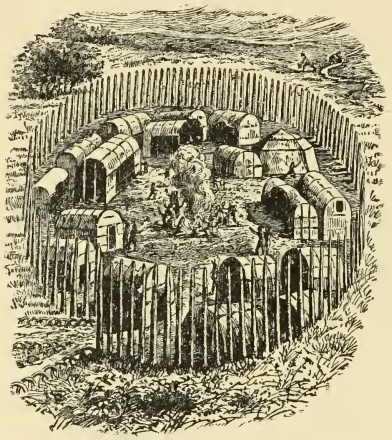
Wampum Belt

gether into a belt, and these wampum belts may now be seen in any museum that has a collection of Indian relics.

As the Indians seldom stayed very long in one place, they made their houses so that they could be folded up and carried about on the backs of the hunting dogs. These tents, or wigwams as they were called, were circular or oblong in shape. They were made of strips of bark or hides of animals firmly sewed together and stretched over poles. At the top of the wigwam was an opening to allow the smoke to escape from the fire which was built in the center. On the cold winter nights the Indian boys and girls liked to sit before the wigwam

fire and watch their elders smoke their long pipes, and hear them tell stories of good and evil spirits, and of their own deeds of valor.

There was very little furniture in the wigwams. Blankets made of animals' skins served for bed covering, and the bare floor or the soft green grass answered for beds, chairs, and dining tables. Dry sticks rubbed together until they produced a spark were used as matches to light the fire, and for cooking utensils crude kettles were fashioned from stone or clay. Large seashells made excellent plates and platters.



PALISADED INDIAN VILLAGE ON ALBEMARLE SOUND IN 1585

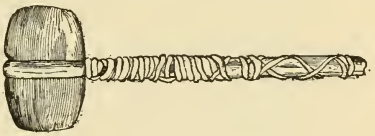
The Indians' food was chiefly game and fish, but they also had little gardens in which they raised maize, or Indian corn, and sometimes beans and squash. The squaws did all the work in the gardens, their only tool being a stone, or clam-shell hoe. The braves thought it was but right that the squaws should do the gardening, as their own time was needed for killing game and for fighting, which was their chief occupation.

The various tribes were constantly at war with one another. Their weapons were swift-flying, flint-tipped arrows, and stone knives and tomahawks.

Indian Bow and Arrows

To this day the Indian arrowheads are dug up from time to time in our pastures.

When he was not fighting, the Indian spent his days in hunting and fishing, or in building canoes. These were made of birch bark or of skins, and sometimes were hewn from solid logs. The bark and skin canoes were very light in weight, yet strong and swift. They were managed with great skill in dangerous currents and rough water.



A Tomahawk

The Indians delighted in feasts and festivals. For amusements they played ball, ran races, threw quoits, and had many other games not unlike our own. The famous game of Lacrosse was invented by the Indians. In their sports and games, as in warfare, they were often crafty and cruel.

The "talking pages," as the Indians called the books of the palefaces, were meaningless to savages. A rude kind of picture-writing served their simple

purposes. An Indian boy had no school to attend, but was taught to use the bow and arrow and tomahawk, and to paddle a canoe. He learned also self-control and to bear pain silently, as the savages had great contempt for any one who could not endure torture without a sound. The little girls, some of whom were exceedingly pretty, helped in the work of the wigwams and in the care of the corn ground. They learned early how to string beads and to make moccasins.

By instinct an Indian child could find his way through thick woods where a white child would have been hopelessly lost. The savages had no roads, for they had no wagons or horses or oxen. Their only animals were hunting dogs. Their trained eyes were keen and their sense of direction accurate. They knew how to avoid steep hills and troublesome swamps, and many of our roads and railways, as for example, the New York Central Railroad, follow the old Indian trails through the wilderness.

Each tribe or nation held its own land, and had its chief, and some of the tribes were governed by wise laws. The religion of the Indians was simple. In a vague way they believed in "spirits" and thought that every plant and animal as well as every human being possessed one. Sometimes they talked of a Great Spirit that watched over the world. They had many fantastic dances as a part of their religious ceremony. They knew how to make use of healing

herbs in sickness; but their "medicine men" often resorted to sorcery.

The English colonists learned many valuable things from the Indians. The red man taught the paleface to girdle the tall trees so that they would die, and thus admit light and sun to make the corn and vegetables grow; and to fertilize the corn by putting a dead fish in each hill where it was planted. From their dark-skinned neighbors the English-

Indian Canoe and Tents

men learned to make maple sugar, to spear fish through the ice in winter, and to make moccasins and snowshoes. They learned also new methods of warfare.

As we know, Pocahontas was the daughter of Powhatan, a powerful chief among the Indians in the vicinity of Jamestown. We have learned, too, that Captain John Smith said she saved his life at a time

when the Indians were preparing to put him to death.

After Smith had been released by his Indian captors and permitted to join his companions, Pocahontas came frequently to the Jamestown settlement, bringing corn to the famished Englishmen. She grew very fond of Smith and his white friends, and they in turn liked to have her visit them. Once she gave warning of an attack the Indians were preparing to make upon them, and so prevented the colonists from being surprised and massacred.

POCAHONTAS

From the portrait Booton painted in England shortly before she died.

Soon after Captain Smith went back to England in 1609 the settlers had fresh trouble with the natives. The new governor, Sir Samuel Argall, was a selfish, dishonorable man, who cared for nothing except getting money for his own pocket. He took all the corn that the colonists could raise, loaded it on ships, and sent it to England, where it was sold at a profit; but not a cent did the poor settlers get.

As Argall did not allow his conscience to trouble him, you can understand how he could plot with a

treacherous Indian for the capture of Pocahontas. She was stolen from her fond old father and delivered into the hands of the tricky governor. Again and again the grief-stricken Powhatan tried, by pleading, threat, or offer of ransom, to get his daughter back, but the English would not give her up.

Pocahontas had by this time grown to be a charming, graceful young woman. She became a great favorite in the English settlement and one of the young colonists, John Rolfe, fell in love with her.

Now King James had said in his charter to the colony that there was to be no religion except that of the Episcopal Church. Pocahontas was called a heathen, and therefore Rolfe could not marry her until she became a Christian. Accordingly, in 1614, in the rough little log church at Jamestown, Pocahontas was christened and given the name Rebecca, after which, in broken English, she took the marriage vows and became the wife of John Rolfe.

Rolfe was the first Englishman who had ventured to wed an Indian girl. Powhatan was much pleased because his daughter had married a white man. He forgave the palefaces and became their friend. For a long time the settlers had nothing more to fear from attacks of his tribe. As Longfellow says in the "Song of Hiawatha": —

> "Buried was the bloody hatchet,
> Buried was the dreadful war-club,
> Buried were all warlike weapons,
> And the war-cry was forgotten.

There was peace among the nations;
Unmolested roved the hunters,
Built the birch canoe for sailing,
Caught the fish in lake and river,
Shot the deer and trapped the beaver;
Unmolested worked the women,
Made their sugar from the maple,
Gathered wild rice in the meadows,
Dressed the skins of deer and beaver."

In 1612, five years after John Smith had established the colony at Jamestown, John Rolfe planted the first tobacco. Before that time the emigrants had cultivated only corn and a few other vegetables. Rolfe's tobacco crop was a great success and sold in England at a handsome profit.

At last a way had been found to earn money, and all the colonists were now eager to raise the tobacco plant and send it to Europe. From that time forward the colony increased rapidly in numbers and Jamestown became prosperous. So anxious were the settlers to put every foot of land under the cultivation of tobacco, that it was finally necessary to pass a law compelling them to plant enough corn for food.

In connection with tobacco-raising there is another thing that history forces us to remember — the introduction of slavery into Virginia. It was difficult to find enough laborers to care for the enormous quantity of tobacco that England was willing to buy. Orphans were taken from asylums in England

and even convicts from jails, but Jamestown still had need for more workers. In 1619 a Dutch ship sailed up the James River with a cargo of twenty negroes who were sold as slaves to the Englishmen. This was the beginning of slavery in the South, and it quickly spread, until, as the years went on, slaves were found in every colony.

Before the opening of this sad chapter in American history, John Rolfe and his wife sailed for England. The English people were so accustomed to kings and princesses that they called Powhatan an Indian king and Pocahontas a princess. It is said that King James was deeply offended because Rolfe had dared to marry a foreign princess. The English, however, were eager to see one of the natives of the New World about which they had heard so much, and they treated Pocahontas with great kindness. At last King James relented and the Indian "princess" was presented at court. How rejoiced her tribe would have been, could they have seen their favorite thus honored; and how they would have exulted in the sight of the bright-colored robes and sparkling jewels worn by the lords and ladies!

Pocahontas never came back to her dear Virginia, never again spoke her own language with the redskins. As she was preparing to sail for America with her husband and infant son, she was taken ill, and died at Gravesend, England, in 1617.

Rolfe returned with his boy to Jamestown and

continued to cultivate tobacco, although the king wrote a book against the "vile weed" and denounced it in Parliament. The young planter became secretary, and later recorder general, of Virginia. The son, Thomas, grew to a prosperous manhood. He was a useful and influential citizen and some of the best families in Virginia to-day proudly trace their ancestry back to the Indian Pocahontas.

Things to Remember

The red men were called Indians because the Spaniards who first came to this country believed that the islands on which they landed were the East Indies.

The Indians who dwelt in what is now the United States were savages. They lived mainly by hunting and fishing, and knew little of agriculture and nothing of manufacturing.

They were divided into tribes, and each tribe was ruled by a chief.

Pocahontas, the daughter of a powerful Indian chief, Powhatan, married John Rolfe, an Englishman.

In 1612 John Rolfe planted the first tobacco in Virginia.

The raising of large quantities of tobacco led in 1619 to the introduction of slavery.

Memory Selection. — Thackeray's "Pocahontas."

VIII. MILES STANDISH AND THE PILGRIMS

Standish: Born about 1584 — Died 1656

The breaking waves dashed high
  On a stern and rock-bound coast,
And the woods against a stormy sky
  Their giant branches tossed;

And the heavy night hung dark
  The hills and waters o'er,
When a band of exiles moored their bark
  On the wild New England shore.

* * * * *

Ay, call it holy ground,
  The soil where first they trod.
They left unstained what there they found, —
  Freedom to worship God.

— Mrs. Hemans's "The Landing of the Pilgrims."

Can you picture a short man with broad shoulders, blue eyes, and reddish hair; with muscles as strong as iron, and face bronzed by exposure to wind and sun? He is dressed in a doublet, close-fitting knee breeches, and high leather boots. His breastplate is of steel, and by his side there hangs a sword, curved at the point and ornamented with Arabic letters.

This man is Miles Standish, a brave, true-hearted English soldier who in 1620 came to America with the Pilgrims, the first English settlers on the "stern and rock-bound" New England coast.

Captain John Smith has often been called the Father of Virginia, because his hardihood, pluck, and common sense saved the life of the first Virginia settlement. In the same way Miles Standish may be regarded as one of the fathers of Massachusetts.

Miles Standish

He was fond of fighting and of adventure, and he came to America for no other reason than to help the Pilgrims in their task of making a new home in the forest wilds. He did not share the religious beliefs that drove this little body of emigrants to America. He came as their friend and helper, and his sagacity and bravery in dealing with the Indians once saved their lives, as we shall read later in this chapter.

The Standish family had lived for many years at Duxbury Hall, Lancashire, England, and many of its members had been knighted for brave deeds. Miles fought with the English army in France and Holland, where he proved his worth and was made

a captain. He happened to be living in Leyden, Holland, when the Pilgrims fled from England to that country, and Standish and his wife, Rose, became their warm friends.

What was it that led these English men and women to abandon their homes and seek shelter first in Holland and then in America? It was the desire for freedom to worship God in whatever way they chose.

In common with most rulers of his time King James was tyrannical in matters of religion. He would not permit his subjects to use a form of service that differed in any way from that of the Established, or Episcopal, Church, and every one was made to pay a fine if he did not attend church. There were many who preferred a simpler service, and at last they left the Church and dared to worship in their own way. For this they were called Separatists, because they "separated" from the established form of worship.

The king was so angry with the Separatists that he punished them in every possible manner. He even went so far as to throw some of them into prison, where they languished and died. Others were driven from place to place by his persecutions, so they came finally to be called Pilgrims or Wanderers.

A small band of these people collected at Scrooby in Nottinghamshire, but the tyranny of King James

pursued them. Many were seized and put into prison, and all were hunted and persecuted in one way or another. They therefore resolved, in 1608, to forsake their country and take refuge in Holland, where they knew that they would find the religious liberty they desired.

The Dutch treated the Pilgrims kindly. For twelve years, first at Amsterdam and later at Leyden, the little English community lived in peace. But there were reasons why the Pilgrims did not care to remain permanently in Holland. In spite of all they had suffered, they still loved their country, and wished their children to grow to manhood and womanhood using the speech and customs of England. This they could not do while they remained in Holland, surrounded by people who spoke the Dutch language and whose manners and habits were Dutch.

So at last this little band of exiles resolved to make another effort to find a suitable home. "Let us cross the ocean," said they, "and found a *new* England in America. There land is plentiful and we may live unmolested. We shall have freedom to worship as we wish, and opportunity to bring up our children in accordance with our own ideas."

They therefore procured permission from the London Company to settle on the coast of what is now New Jersey. The Pilgrims well knew that a difficult and dangerous undertaking lay be-

fore them, and it was thought unwise for the whole Leyden community to go. Among the men and women chosen to make the experiment were Miles and Rose Standish.

When the little *Speedwell* sailed out of Delft Haven with her brave company, sad and tearful were the

Map of Holland and a Part of England

partings of families and friends. Even the Dutch on-lookers wept in sympathy. At Southampton, England, the *Speedwell* was joined by the *Mayflower*, and both ships set out to cross the ocean; but after they had "gone to sea again about one hundred leagues without the Land's End," the *Speedwell* began to leak so badly that it was necessary to put back. The disheartened Pilgrims were obliged to admit that she was totally unfit for the long and

perilous voyage. So the *Speedwell* was abandoned. Some of her passengers remained behind in England, and the rest crowded on board the *Mayflower*, raising the number of passengers to about one hundred.

In the pleasant month of September in the year 1620, this good ship with her precious cargo again left Southampton. For many long weeks she was tossed by heavy gales and towering waves. Only a few men dared venture on deck; the rest were crowded into the ill-ventilated cabin, far too small for the number it sheltered.

The intention had been to land near the Delaware River, but the captain was carried out of his course, and on the 21st of November found himself among the shoals of Cape Cod, Massachusetts. Through Captain John Smith's explorations of the New England coast the Pilgrims had heard of the cold winters in that region. They had, therefore, wished to settle farther south; but all were eager to begin life in the new home and it was decided to remain at Cape Cod. At what point should they land? There must be an abundant supply of fresh water, and soil free from rocks and stones.

For four or five weeks the *Mayflower* skirted the coast in the neighborhood of Provincetown, while a few of the men in a shallop explored the shore. The little shallop ran upon "dangerous shoals and roaring breakers"; but, with rudder lost and mast

and sail gone, it kept to its task until a spot had been selected.

Miles Standish was the man who chose the site for the new settlement. The land had been cleared to some extent by the Indians, and there was a spring of pure water near. Moreover, while ex-

DEPARTURE OF THE PILGRIMS FROM DELFT HAVEN
After the painting by Cope.

ploring inland, the Pilgrims had discovered several mounds which were found to contain a quantity of corn. This was indeed a welcome sight, and the Englishmen had great need of it before the winter was over. To their credit be it said that some time afterward they found the Indians to whom the corn belonged and paid them for it.

This place was down on Captain Smith's map as Plymouth, and here the people of the *Mayflower* came ashore on the 21st of December, 1620. While near Provincetown they had drawn up in the cabin of the *Mayflower* a solemn compact in which the Pilgrims agreed to enact just and equal laws, which all should obey for the general good of the colony. John Carver was chosen governor.

The water at Plymouth was so shallow that even the shallop could not run up to the bank, and the Pilgrims stepped first on a rock, and then to solid ground. There is still shown at Plymouth a rock which is said to be the one which the Pilgrims used as a stepping-stone.

The little band of wanderers came ashore in a storm of sleet and wind. The snow lay deep upon the winter woods, the ground was frozen, and the Pilgrims suffered intensely while they cut down trees and built a log house. At first they all lived together in one cabin.

Soon food became scarce, and many fell sick from lack of nourishment or from exposure. Throughout that first hard winter Miles Standish showed that he could be gentle and tender as well as brave. At one time there were only six or seven well people in Plymouth, and Standish was one of these. He helped prepare what little food there was, and carefully nursed the sick. Before the spring sun shone, more than one half of the Pilgrims had been

laid beneath the snow, and among them was Rose Standish, the wife of the brave captain.

Though no Indians came to molest them, the Pilgrims lived in constant fear of attack. Graves were smoothed to a level with the ground, and over them in the spring corn was planted, in order that

SIGNING THE COMPACT IN THE CABIN OF THE "MAYFLOWER"

the natives might not know how many white men had died. The guns of the Pilgrims were their constant companions, and were carried even to the church services, held in the little cabin that served as both church and fort.

At last the dreary winter was over. With the coming of the warm sunshine, the blooming of flowers, and the singing of birds, the Pilgrims took heart. When the *Mayflower* sailed for home, not one of the number would return. To persevere in

the face of all obstacles is the Pilgrims' great lesson to America.

The settlers were astonished one day at having an Indian rush into their settlement and cry, "Welcome, Englishmen!" This was Samoset, who had learned a few words of English from fishermen. Soon Samoset made a second visit, and this time brought an Indian named Squanto, who had been captured and taken to England, where he learned the language and habits of civilized people.

Then Massasoit, chief of the tribe of Wampanoags, appeared with fifty or sixty warriors gaily decorated with paint and feathers. Squanto acted as interpreter, and the palefaces and redskins had a friendly conference. According to the Indian custom, a pipe of peace was smoked; then an agreement was made by which the Indians and the English promised to treat each other as friends. This treaty of peace was kept for fifty years. The Indians not only did no harm to the white people, but helped them in every way, and Squanto expressed a wish to live with the Pilgrims. He died among them, and his last words were: "Pray that the Indian Squanto may go to the white man's heaven."

About twenty miles from Plymouth there dwelt a tribe of Indians that hated Massasoit. These were the Narragansetts, and their chief was Canonicus. "Why should I let these paleface friends of my enemy live in peace?" thought Canonicus. Accord-

ingly he sent to the Pilgrims a bundle of arrows wrapped in the skin of a rattlesnake. This was a declaration of war. Governor Bradford, who had succeeded Governor Carver, and Miles Standish were not men to be frightened easily ; they filled the skin with powder and shot and sent it back.

THE "MAYFLOWER" IN PLYMOUTH HARBOR
After the painting by Hallsall.

It happened that Canonicus had heard of the wonderful guns of the white men, and he had no desire to get in their way. When he found, therefore, that the Englishmen were willing to fight, he gave up the idea of attack.

One day Massasoit came with a thrilling piece of news — some Indians of still another tribe were plotting to massacre the white settlers. Captain Stand-

ish assembled a company of men well armed with muskets and swords, and marched to meet the savages. We may read about it in Longfellow's poem:

"Meantime the stalwart Miles Standish was marching steadily northward,
Winding through forest and swamp, and along the trend of the seashore.

* * * * * *

After a three days' march he came to an Indian encampment
Pitched on the edge of a meadow, between the sea and the forest;
Women at work by the tents, and the warriors horrid with war-paint
Seated about a fire, and smoking and talking together;
Who, when they saw from afar the sudden approach of the white men,
Saw the flash of the sun on breastplate and saber and musket,
Straightway leaped to their feet, and two from among them advancing
Came to parley with Standish, and offer him furs as a present;
Friendship was in their looks, but in their hearts there was hatred."

Pecksuot, the Indian leader, grew very insolent when he saw that the white captain was a man of small stature. He called Standish a boy, and said that his place was at home helping the women, and not fighting Indians. Standish quickly decided that, if there had to be bloodshed, the sooner it was over the better, and it was not long before the savages were so astonished by the power of this "Little Captain" that they decided to keep peace.

When the golden autumn came the Pilgrims had reason to be happy and grateful. A separate log house had been built for each family, the cornfields had prospered, and game was plentiful. They decided to have a feast and to ask Massasoit and his people to come and join them. The Indians brought deer, the Pilgrims shot wild turkey, there was sea

Pilgrim Fort and Meeting-house

food and corn in abundance; and thus began the custom of setting aside a day of Thanksgiving each year. Let us remember that the first celebration of this kind was eaten at rude tables in the New England wilderness, with Indians for guests.

Other Pilgrims from Holland soon joined the first Plymouth settlement and it grew and prospered. The energetic Captain Standish did his full share of work of every kind, and after a time he went back

to England to borrow money to help the colonists.

The log cabins of the Pilgrims were very simple; they had fireplaces and chimneys of rough stone. Oiled paper was used for window-panes, and chests which the emigrants had brought with them from England served as chairs and benches.

After cabins were built the Pilgrims' next care was to erect a church and schoolhouse, and not much time was allowed the children for play by these serious, hard-working fathers and mothers.

Every Sunday morning the people were called to worship by the beating of a drum. A sentinel in a suit of armor stood near the meeting-house to watch for Indians and, if necessary, to give the alarm to the worshipers. As the men filed into the building they left their muskets with the sentinel. Sometimes the services lasted three or four hours. A constable with a long wand, on one end of which was a hare's foot, was on duty to keep the worshipers awake. It is said that when grown-up persons went to sleep, the constable would touch them gently on the forehead with the hare's foot; but if a child nodded, he was rapped with the other end of the wand, not so gently.

After the Plymouth colony was well established, Miles Standish planted a little settlement near by, which he named Duxbury in memory of his English home. Here he died after a long and useful life.

In Duxbury there has been erected to his memory

a granite monument one hundred feet high, with a statue of the heroic captain looking out over the sea he so daringly crossed to help others find a home of freedom. If you ever visit Plymouth, do not fail to look at the interesting relics of the Pilgrims preserved there. You will find among them the trusty sword of Miles Standish.

Things to Remember

The Pilgrims were a band of Englishmen who were driven out of their country by religious persecution.

They came to America in the year 1620 in the ship *Mayflower*.

They planted a colony at Plymouth, Massachusetts.

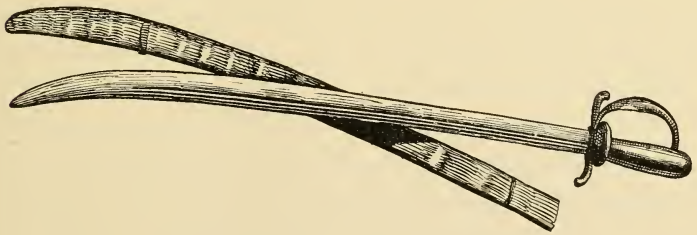
Miles Standish helped to establish the settlement at Plymouth, and to prevent its being destroyed by the Indians.

The establishment of Plymouth colony was the second step in founding a new nation in America.

The first Thanksgiving in this country was observed by the Pilgrims at Plymouth in 1621.

Map Work. — Locate Scrooby, Leyden, Delft Haven, Plymouth in England, Cape Cod, Plymouth in New England.

Memory Selections. — Hemans's "The Landing of the Pilgrims." Whittier's "The Corn Song."



The Sword of Miles Standish
In Pilgrim Hall, Plymouth.

IX. JOHN WINTHROP AND THE PURITANS

Winthrop: Born 1583 — Died 1649

"Praise ye the Lord!" The psalm to-day
Still rises in our ears.
Borne from the hills of Boston Bay
Through five times fifty years,
When Winthrop's fleet from Yarmouth crept
Out to the open main,
And through the widening waters swept,
In April sun and rain.
"Pray to the Lord with fervent lips,"
The leader shouted, "pray;"
And prayer arose from all the ships
As faded Yarmouth Bay.

— BUTTERWORTH'S "The Thanksgiving in Boston Harbor."

WE have now learned that before 1630 the English had two footholds in the New World — one on the shore of Virginia and the other in what we now call the state of Massachusetts. Let us see what was the next important step in the colonization of America by the English.

Nearly ten years passed after the Pilgrims landed in New England before they were joined by the Puritans. In 1630 the Pilgrim colonists numbered in all but three hundred — a small group to dwell in a wilderness inhabited by savages. They did not

regret the step they had taken, or falter in their resolve to make America their home; but aching hearts were often hidden by stern faces, and homesick eyes rested longingly on the dark waters. On the other side lay the mother country, with its well-loved towns, and streams, and farm lands, and there were homesteads and friends.

But the years of their solitude were drawing to a close; for other Englishmen were coming to keep the Pilgrims company, to form new colonies, and to unite with them in a common defense when the natives became hostile.

Who were these new colonists, and what caused them to come to America? They were called Puritans, because they wished to change or *purify* some of the forms of the English church service and church government. Neither King James, nor Charles I, who succeeded him, would allow any liberty in religion or politics. "I will make them conform to my ways," said King James, "or I will harry them out of the land."

Both monarchs were to find that the Pilgrims and Puritans were willing to be harried out of the land rather than submit to the harsh laws of their royal rulers. The Puritans, therefore, left England, as the Pilgrims had done, because they desired greater religious and political freedom than it was possible for them to have at home.

While the Pilgrims had been practically cut off

from the rest of the world, they managed sometimes to send letters home by the Englishmen who had fisheries on the New England coast. From these letters, as well as from the fishermen themselves, the Puritans heard descriptions of America, of its vast acres of rich land ready for the plow, and of the abundant fish and game and fur-bearing animals. So they, too, at length decided to come to this new country.

An Old House in Salem

The first of the Puritans came over in 1628 under John Endicott. They settled north of Plymouth, and gave to their little colony the Bible name of Salem, meaning "peace." The Indians called this whole region Massachusetts, or the Land of the Blue Hills.

Two years later a company larger by far than any that had yet left England for this country, was headed by John Winthrop. He was a gentleman of wealth, a descendant of a fine old family living near Groton, England, a man of strong mind and high moral character. Always deeply religious, he had studied for the ministry, but to please his father had given it up for the law. He held the office of justice of the peace before he was eighteen years of age.

As the years passed John Winthrop grew tired of the despotism of the king. At last, in 1629, he met with about a dozen companions, and after serious discussion they resolved that "for God's glory and the country's good" they would "pass the seas under God's protection to inhabit and continue in New England."

They had little difficulty in obtaining from the king a charter granting them permission to establish a new colony with the right to make their own laws. Their corporation was called the Massachusetts Bay Company, and their leader, John Winthrop, was appointed first governor of the Massachusetts colony.

JOHN WINTHROP

From the portrait by Van Dyck in the Senate Chamber of Massachusetts.

This large Puritan migration which set out in 1630 was very different from that of the Pilgrims of ten years before. The little *Mayflower* had alone borne the Pilgrims across the Atlantic. This same *Mayflower* was now one of the ships of the Puritan fleet that sailed happily out of Yarmouth Bay; but there were ten others to keep her company. The *Arabella* was the one in which Winthrop crossed.

From March until June they sailed across the ocean, and then: —

"'Praise ye the Lord with fervent lips,
Praise ye the Lord to-day,'
The anthem rose from all the ships
Safe moored in Boston Bay.

The *Arabella* leads the song, —
The *Mayflower* sings below,
That first the Pilgrims bore along
The Plymouth reefs of snow."

In the eleven ships were seven hundred men and women. There were horses and cattle, tools of many kinds, powder and shot, grain and seed, clothing and provisions.

Far different, too, from the winter desolation of the coast on which the Pilgrims first set foot, was the sight that greeted the Puritans when they arrived in the pleasant summer of 1630. It was the month of June; flowers were holding up their bright faces and filling the air with perfume, strawberries were ripening, and better than all, Endicott and his companions at Salem were waiting to give them welcome.

Winthrop did not remain at Salem, but established his little community at Charlestown. It was soon found, however, that the water there was impure, and many died from its unwholesome effects. Across the river from Charlestown was a piece of land consisting of three hills. This was known as Tri-mountain, a name afterward shortened to Tremont.

To Tri-mountain Governor Winthrop moved his colony, and the place was called Boston, after a fine old city in England, which many of the settlers knew and loved. On the highest of the three hills a beacon light was set to pilot ships coming into the

THE LAND OF THE PILGRIMS AND PURITANS

harbor, and from this point beacon fires gave the signal of danger from Indian attacks. It is still called Beacon Hill, and one of Boston's chief thoroughfares is known as Beacon Street.

The Puritans' first winter in New England was almost as severe as had been that of the Pilgrims.

The new settlers were not accustomed to the hardships of life in a strange, cold wilderness, and their provisions ran short. One of the men wrote: "Bread was so very scarce that sometimes I thought the very crumbs of my father's table would be sweet unto me."

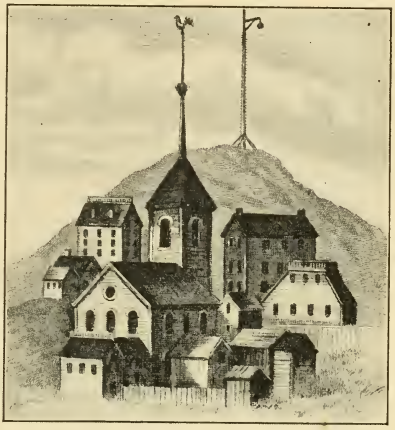
There came a day in midwinter when even Governor Winthrop's corn meal was reduced to a quart, and this he shared with a man poorer than himself. Happily, in that very hour, the hungry Puritans were cheered by the sight of an English ship sailing into Boston harbor. More Puritans with an abundant food supply had come to join the colonists.

Although two hundred died during that first bitter winter, Winthrop, calm, courageous, and energetic, never lost heart. He helped with his own hands to do whatever labor was to be performed, and his example of patience and endurance did more than anything else to cheer and save the colony.

Many more emigrants arrived in the spring, the outlook brightened, and from that time the Massachusetts colony steadily grew. During the next ten years more than twenty thousand persons flocked to New England, and settlements were started at Watertown, Roxbury, and other places near Boston.

To each person who subscribed fifty pounds — about two hundred and fifty dollars — toward a colony, was given two hundred acres of land; but the Puritans did not depend entirely upon agricul-

ture. They became shipbuilders, engaged in commerce with the West Indies, and established fisheries at Newfoundland, which were so successful that the codfish became the emblem of wealth in Massachusetts. To-day a golden codfish may be seen in the State Capitol at Boston, showing that it is still a symbol of prosperity. How astonished the Puritans would have been, could they have foreseen that in the year 1905 the codfish catch of North America would be worth more than twelve million dollars.



BEACON HILL, BOSTON, IN 1640

The Puritans believed that they had a perfect right to the land because it had been given them by the king, and they therefore did not hesitate to take from the Indians, without paying for it, all they desired. When one of their number, a clergyman named Roger Williams, dared to insist that the Indians should be paid, the Puritans were very indignant.

When Roger Williams further said that the Puritans had no right to punish those colonists who did not attend church, he was turned out of the colony; yet his advice was often sought and followed by

Governor Winthrop and his colonists. The Puritans were no more willing to grant freedom to those whose views differed from their own, than the heads of the Episcopal Church in England had been. But the Puritans felt that they had suffered so much for their faith that they had a right to maintain it at any cost.

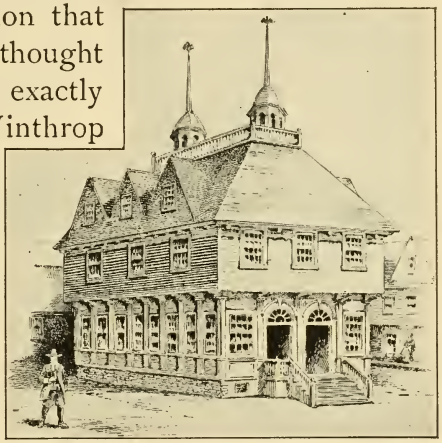
The custom of holding town meetings, now so general, was first established by the Pilgrims and Puritans. The town meeting was the beginning of government by the people without the aid of kings. Each colony held its own meeting in either the church or schoolhouse and no man was allowed to vote at town meeting unless he was a church member. The colonists selected their own governor, deputy governor, and a council of eighteen men to make the necessary laws. At first the council managed all public affairs, but after a few years there was a General Court or legislature elected to make the laws.

One of the wisest acts of the Puritans, and one which had a far-reaching result, was the early establishment of schools. Many of the colonists were college-bred men, and they desired their children to be educated. They said: "In order that learning may not be buried in the graves of our fathers we will establish free schools."

In 1647, only nineteen years after the landing of the Puritans, the General Court passed a law requiring that there should be a school in every town hav-

ing fifty or more householders; and thus was laid the foundation of the present free school system of the United States. These schools of the Puritans, we must not forget, were for boys only. Girls then and for many years afterward were taught at home.

Six years is a very short time in which to establish a town on the shores of a wilderness and bring it to such a condition that a college may be thought of; and yet this is exactly what Governor Winthrop and the Puritans did at Boston. Only six years after they landed they set aside a fund for the founding of a college. The amount of money was not large, but two years later John Harvard died in Charlestown, leaving his library and half of his estate to aid in carrying out the plan. Such was the beginning of Harvard College.

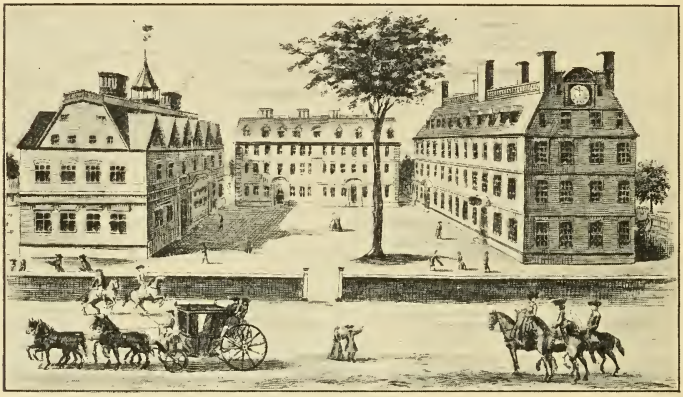


First Town House in Boston, 1658

John Winthrop was more than forty years of age when he came to America. From that time until his death, nineteen years later, he never ceased to work for the good of the Massachusetts colony, and for twelve years he served as its governor. In his

busy life he found time to write many books, one of them a "History of Massachusetts."

He died in Boston, deeply loved by friends in England and America for his devotion to what he



An Early View of Harvard College

believed to be his duty, and for his patience and kindness. Some one has said of him: "Among the millions of men descended from those whom he ruled, there is no one who does not owe much of what is best within him to the benevolent and courageous wisdom of John Winthrop."

As we follow the fortunes of the United States through the years that have passed since John Winthrop founded Boston, we shall learn of the prominent and useful part Massachusetts has always taken in the affairs of the nation.

Things to Remember

The Puritans were Englishmen who, like the Pilgrims, left their native country because they desired greater religious and political liberty.

The first Puritan settlement in New England was planted at Salem, Massachusetts, in 1628.

The chief figure in the early life of Massachusetts was Governor John Winthrop.

Governor Winthrop founded a much larger colony at Boston in 1630.

Harvard College was founded only six years after the Puritans settled at Boston.

To the Pilgrims and Puritans the United States owes the beginning of its present free school system, and its system of government by the people.

Map Work. — Locate Salem, Charlestown, Boston, Cambridge, Dorchester, Watertown.

X. HENRY HUDSON

Born about 1566 — Died 1611

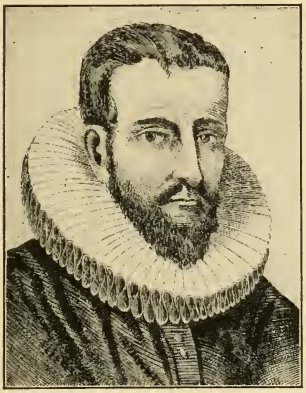
There we moored our vessel safely from the swirling autumn tides,
And the red men in their shallops came and stroked her salty sides;
As they marveled at her hugeness, of our friendship grew they fain,
And they brought us pipes of copper, mellow grapes, and yellow grain.
When I questioned them for tidings of our much-desired goal,
Though their savage tongue I knew not, yet they beckoned toward the Pole.
So we heaved the *Half Moon's* anchor, and we got her under way,
And we shaped our voyage Northward for the harbors of Cathay.

— GUITERMAN'S "Hudson's Third Voyage."

WHILE Captain John Smith was working hard in Virginia to keep alive the little Jamestown colony, his friend Henry Hudson, in 1609, discovered and explored the river that bears his name. There are few more beautiful rivers in the world than this broad stream that flows through what we now know as the state of New York.

Hudson was born of English parents, probably in London, and his home, so far as he had a home on land, was always in England. Like many men of his time, he was a sea rover, one of the brave, hardy navigators who were ready to sail at a moment's notice in any direction that suggested fresh adventure or discovery.

The journal of this able sea captain shows that in the year 1607 there assembled in St. Ethelburga's Church, London, the men "who proposed to go to sea to discover a passage by the North Pole to Japan and China." The list of eleven names that follows in the journal begins with "Henry Hudson, master," and ends with that of his son, "John Hudson, a boy."



HENRY HUDSON
From a painting said to be from life.

On this voyage Hudson explored the coast of Greenland until his path was blocked by ice, and he sailed nearer to the North Pole than had any one before. The next year, 1608, he made another attempt to find a northwest passage by sailing between Spitzbergen and Nova Zembla. Again he failed to find Asia, but the voyage was not without important results. It led to the establishment of English whale fisheries near the island of Spitzbergen, and to valuable corrections in the map of that bleak country.

These two daring attempts of Hudson to discover a path to Asia through the icy northern waters were much talked of. His fame as an explorer reached the ears of the Dutch East India Company, a great

corporation in Holland which carried on trade with India and China. Holland was at that time one of the chief commercial nations of the world, and the city of Amsterdam was a center for European commerce.

The Dutch, therefore, were particularly interested in a shorter passage to the rich countries and islands of the East. "Since Hudson is one of the best seamen in Europe," reasoned the Dutch East India Company, "why should we not engage his services to find this long-looked-for gateway, and thus perhaps save our ships the tedious journey around Africa?"

No sooner were the arrangements between the Dutch Company and the English captain completed, than the king of France offered Hudson four hundred crowns to make similar explorations for the French. But France was too late, and on April 4, 1609, Henry Hudson set out from Amsterdam on his memorable voyage. He sailed in the *Half Moon*, a boat of about eighty tons' burden, with a crew of twenty English and Dutch sailors. He was provided with maps and log books of previous explorers, and he carried also a letter that he considered most important. It was from Captain Smith, suggesting to Hudson that there was "a strait leading into the western ocean, by the north of the English colony in Virginia." Little indeed did these men know of the vast continent of America. Instead of a strait

leading to the Pacific Ocean there were three thousand miles of land.

Since the hope of the Dutch Company was to find the northern route, the little *Half Moon* at first held steadily to the northwest. Colder and colder blew the biting winds until finally the dreaded icebergs compelled the voyagers to turn south.

But Hudson would not give up the search. Why should he not try that route north of the Virginia colony? We learn from the record of his voyage that by the second of July he found himself off the Great Bank of Newfoundland, on the fourth of August he was at Cape Cod, and a fortnight later near the James River in Virginia.

No doubt the explorer would have liked to stop at Jamestown and visit his friend Smith, but he did not dare yield to the temptation. He had already disobeyed his company's orders to "return to Amsterdam if he failed to find the northern passage in the vicinity of Nova Zembla."

So in the pleasant weather of late summer Hudson turned back and pressed on under full sail until, on September 3, he reached the entrance to what is now New York Harbor.

Imagine the joy with which the captain and his men found themselves one day ascending a broad salt stream. "This," cried they exultingly, "is at last the coveted opening to the great East."

It was what the Indians called the "River of the

Mountains," and as the *Half Moon* proceeded slowly on her course, the friendly natives glided from the banks in their canoes and came close to the "great white bird." The savages thought the paleface brothers had been sent to them from heaven. It needed only a little urging to induce them to come on

THE "HALF MOON" AT THE HIGHLANDS
After the painting by Moran.

board and exchange furs, skins, pumpkins, and grapes for beads, knives, and pieces of bright cloth.

At a point on the river near where the city of Hudson now stands, the captain went ashore and visited an Indian camp. He found the Indians "very loving," and to show their appreciation they prepared a feast, roasting pigeons and one of their hunting dogs. They became so interested in their new guest with the white face and scarlet clothes that they urged him to remain over night. When Hudson refused, they

fancied it was because he was afraid of them; so they collected all their arrows and broke them before his eyes.

The explorer, however, was eager to pursue his journey, and bidding his red friends good-by, he went on board ship and ordered all sail spread. Soon the *Half Moon* was gliding northward between the banks that Hudson described as "pleasant with grass and flowers and goodly trees, — as beautiful a land as one can tread upon."

Again he was doomed to defeat. He had noticed that, as his vessel proceeded, the water became more shallow, and he found to his dismay that it was fresh instead of salt. Before Albany was reached the *Half Moon* was obliged to anchor for fear of running aground. A smaller boat was used to explore the stream, and after a month of vain effort, Hudson and his men turned their faces toward the Old World.

The spring of 1610 marked the departure of Hudson, this time under the English flag, on what proved to be his last effort to find the northwest passage. In due time he reached North America, and entered the great land-locked bay that now bears his name. Carefully he sailed along its coast, mile after mile, until he found that he had come back to his starting point, and that there was no other outlet.

In these ice-bound regions he and his men spent

the long Arctic winter, suffering frightfully from cold and lack of food. But Hudson had a spirit that failure could not conquer, and warmer weather found him still hopeful and determined to push his explorations. The crew, however, tired of cold,

TRADING WITH THE INDIANS

hardship and hunger, became mutinous, and refused to sail in any direction but toward England. The captain pleaded with them, but they would not relent. They bound their master hand and foot and put him in a small boat with his young son and five or six starving sailors. They then cut these unfortunate men adrift and headed their ship for home.

Nothing more was heard of the brave Henry Hudson, and the wild waters of Hudson Bay are

his grave and monument. Hudson died without dreaming of the future importance of his discovery of the Hudson River; nor did he realize that new colonies in America would result from his report to the Dutch East India Company.

The valuable furs that the explorer had brought back with him tempted Hollanders to make voyages to the Hudson River, and gradually there was built up a profitable trade with the Indians, "in this country full of great and tall oaks, peopled with strange-looking red men." Many trading posts were established, the most important being Fort Amsterdam on Manhattan Island, Fort Orange, — the present site of Albany, — and Fort Nassau, near where Philadelphia now stands.

Long years after Hudson's death the Dutch settlers on the green banks of the Hudson River kept the discoverer's name alive in story and legend. When peals of thunder rolled over the Highlands or Catskills, they would say: "Hendrik Hudson and his crew of the *Half Moon* are playing ninepins among the hills." They liked to think of Henry Hudson as a Dutchman, and to picture him smoking a long pipe, from which such whiffs of smoke arose that, when the *Half Moon* first entered New York Harbor, the smoke was like a dense fog around the ship, and prevented the sailors from seeing land! Seated around the hearth at twilight, before the crackling logs, the Dutch parents would

tell their children the mythical tales of the Hudson valley, of the hobgoblins in the Highlands, or of the haunted glens of Sleepy Hollow.

Things to Remember

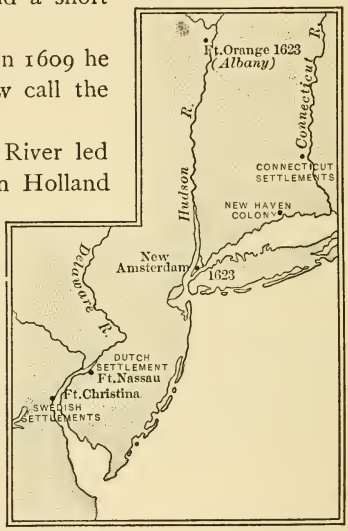
Henry Hudson was an English explorer employed by the Dutch East India Company to try to find a short route to Asia.

While searching for this route in 1609 he discovered the river that we now call the Hudson.

The discovery of the Hudson River led to a profitable fur trade between Holland and the Indians, and to the establishment of Dutch trading posts in America.

The great bay north of Canada, which Hudson explored, was named in his honor.

Map Work. — Locate Holland, Norway, North Cape, Hudson River, Fort Orange (Albany), Hudson Bay. Trace the two routes known at this time by which the Dutch could sail from Holland to the East Indies.



Map showing Early Dutch and Swedish Settlements

XI. PETER STUYVESANT

Born 1602 — Died 1682

Behind the scared squaw's birch canoe
The steamer smokes and raves;
And city lots are staked for sale
Above old Indian graves.
— WHITTIER'S "On Receiving an Eagle's Quill."

Soon after Hudson's voyages Holland took possession of the lands along the Hudson River and as far south as Delaware Bay. This region the Dutch called New Netherland. In 1625 Peter Minuit came over as governor. He at once bought from the Indians for about twenty-four dollars the island of Manhattan. The little town on it he called New Amsterdam, and it later became New York. The governors who followed Minuit got into trouble with the Indians, and also with the English, who claimed all of Connecticut.

The conditions in New Netherland were far from satisfactory when a new governor, Peter Stuyvesant, arrived in 1647. The colonists soon found that he was an honest man with courage, sound judgment, and a firm will. It did not take him long to make a new treaty of peace with the Indians and to quiet the dispute with the English as to their possessions.

There were difficulties also to be overcome in

Delaware. The Swedes, who had settled near Wilmington under Minuit, claimed that country, and opposed the building of a Dutch fort at Newcastle. Three years later they forced the Dutch to surrender the fort.

PETER STUYVESANT

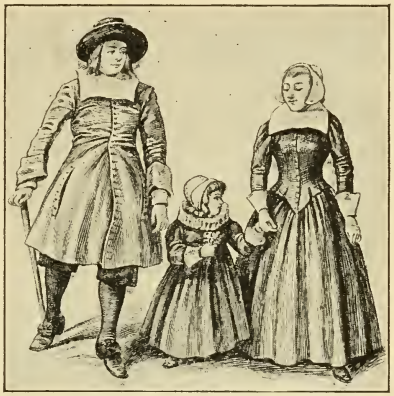
After the portrait in the possession of the New York Historical Society.

The next year, 1656, saw Governor Stuyvesant with seven Dutch vessels and as many hundred men sailing up the Delaware River. He recaptured the fort, took possession of the entire colony of New Sweden, and sailed triumphantly back to New Amsterdam.

Under Stuyvesant commerce began to increase. He obtained for the colony the privilege of trading with Brazil and foreign ports and, what was less fortunate in the end, the right to bring slaves from Africa. While the fur trade laid the foundation for the wealth of New Amsterdam, shipbuilding from the first played an important part. Before Governor Stuyvesant's time, the Manhattan shipyard had built the *New Netherland*, one of the largest vessels then afloat.

Stuyvesant enforced a strict observance of the Sabbath, forbade the sale of firearms and liquor to

the Indians, founded a public school, and encouraged the colonists to erect better buildings. Their first houses were much like those of the English colonists, log cabins of one or two rooms, with thatched roofs. The dwellings afterward erected for permanent use were of wood, with a gable end made of yellow bricks brought from Holland. Usually a weathercock was placed on the roof, and the year in which the house was built might be found in iron letters over the door. The large open fireplaces were decorated with colored tiles, and the floors were covered with white sand.



Early Dutch Costumes

The clothing and household linen were spun by the women of the family, who were noted for industry and good housekeeping. These Dutch women were very picturesque. Their hair was brushed smoothly back under large white caps, and they wore gay-colored skirts and bright stockings which they knitted themselves. The men wore knee breeches with silver buckles and wide-skirted coats ornamented with buttons of silver or brass.

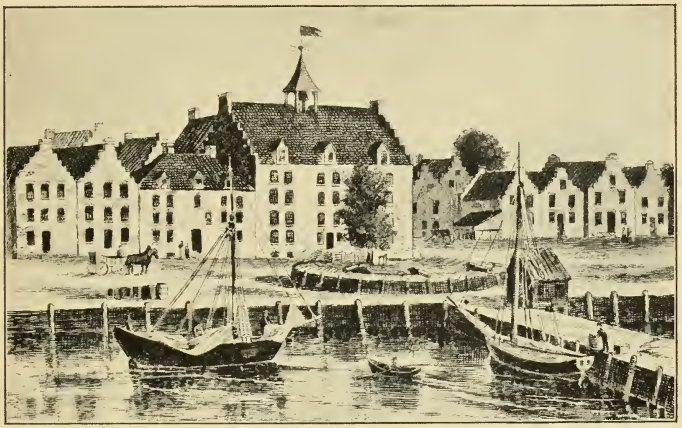
Though the affairs of New Netherland ran smoothly for a time, there were ever increasing anxieties for Governor Stuyvesant. The English colonists continued to come to America in such large numbers that they needed more land, and the question of boundary lines came up again. There were also serious difficulties with the patroons, who were growing so rich and independent that they paid little attention to the governor, or to the Dutch West India Company. One patroon, Killian Van Rensselaer, owned the greater part of what are now three counties near Albany, a tract of land larger than the state of Rhode Island.

Nor was Governor Stuyvesant personally popular with the colonists. Although a council of nine men had been elected to assist him in the government of New Netherland, he was headstrong and inclined to decide all matters for himself. This led to his being nicknamed "Hardheaded Peter." When his people wished to be very disrespectful, they called him "Old Silverleg"; for a wooden leg ornamented with bands of silver replaced a limb that Stuyvesant had lost while serving his country in the West Indies.

On one occasion when the colonists asked for reform, the governor refused to listen to them. "We derive our authority," said he, haughtily, "from God and the West India Company, and not from a few ignorant subjects." Hence it is easy

to understand why the people of New Netherland felt little affection for Peter Stuyvesant, though they were willing to admit that he had many worthy traits. The day was close at hand when they must choose between him and the rule of a foreign power.

We know that the English had claimed America



THE STADTHUYS, NEW YORK, 1679

After Brevoort's drawing. ("Stadthuys" is Dutch for "statehouse.")

since the days of John Cabot's discoveries. In the year 1664 King Charles II gave to his brother James, Duke of York, a large tract of land in America, including New Netherland. Toward the close of the summer the Dutch in New Amsterdam were astonished at the sight of a fleet of British war-ships sailing into the harbor. They were even more startled when Colonel Nichols, the commander, sent a letter to Governor Stuyvesant demanding the sur-

render of New Amsterdam to the English. "If you do not haul down the Dutch flag," said he, "I will fire upon the fort."

As England and Holland were at peace, Stuyvesant regarded this as an outrage. He indignantly tore the letter in shreds and hastily ordered his troops to prepare for attack, though he knew that there were five or six armed Englishmen for every soldier he could muster. But alas for brave Governor Stuyvesant. His people had grown tired of him and of the whole system of government under the Dutch West India Company. "We are willing to try English rule," said they, "and thus save the shedding of innocent blood."

In vain did Stuyvesant declare that he would rather die than surrender; the colonists would not fight, so he was compelled to yield. A treaty was signed at his "Bouwerie," or country house, near the present Bowery and Tenth Street, on September 3, 1664, proclaiming Nichols governor, and renaming the town New York, in honor of the Duke of York.

With a heavy heart Governor Stuyvesant returned to Holland to report what had happened. He did not think that he would ever care to see the weak-spirited New Netherlanders again. But he found that he had grown to love the island of Manhattan, and after a time he returned to the stately mansion on his Bowery farm. Here he lived until his

death, and the tombstone of this last of the Dutch governors is set in the outer wall of St. Mark's church.

PETER STUYVESANT TEARING UP THE ENGLISH LETTER

Under English rule the people of New York were allowed to have a voice in their government, and later they obtained a charter much like the charters of the New England colonists.

Though English people came in large numbers to New York, Holland traits long survived, and for many years Dutch continued to be the common language. It was used in the schools, while English was taught merely as an accomplishment.

The children of America have to thank the Dutch for Santa Claus, for they brought from Holland the jolly custom of celebrating in honor of the good St. Nicholas at Christmas time. Crullers and cookies also were first introduced into this country by the Hollanders.

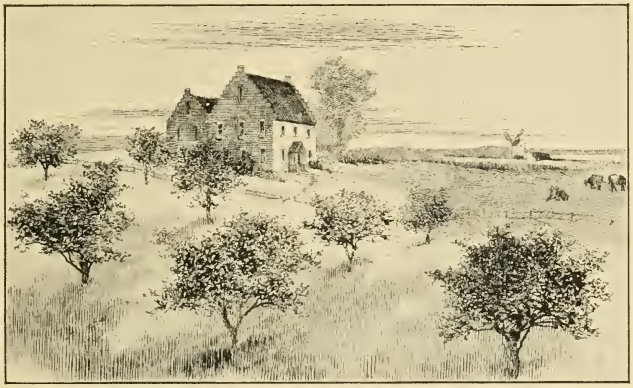
The early Dutch settlers in America did not work so hard as their English neighbors. The Dutch believed that "all work and no play makes Jack a dull boy," and they were fond of indulging in games, such as quoits, or of sitting on their "stoops," or porches, and smoking long-stemmed pipes, after their day's work was ended.

Since Holland had long been a refuge for the persecuted of all lands, it is said that when the English took possession of New Amsterdam they found eighteen different nations represented. From its very foundation, therefore, New York has been, what it is to-day, a cosmopolitan city.

The surrender of the Hollanders to the English was a great relief to the colonists in New England and Virginia, who had been separated by the Dutch possessions. The Duke of York gave to two friends, one of whom was Sir George Carteret, that part of

New Netherland which lay between the Hudson and Delaware rivers. As Carteret was governor of the island of Jersey in the English Channel, this part of New Netherland was called New Jersey.

Although Dutch rule in America was of short duration, what the Dutch accomplished was of great importance in the development of the new country.



A Bouwerie

"Bouwerie" is from the Dutch word meaning "farm."

A valuable fur trade with Europe had been established, thousands of acres of fertile land had been cleared for farming, and the friendship of a powerful tribe of natives, the League of the Iroquois, had been won. We are soon to learn about the French people who came to this country, and how the good will of the Iroquois Indians helped to prevent the French from driving the Dutch and English out of America.

Things to Remember

Peter Stuyvesant, the last Dutch governor of New Netherland, served from 1647 to 1664.

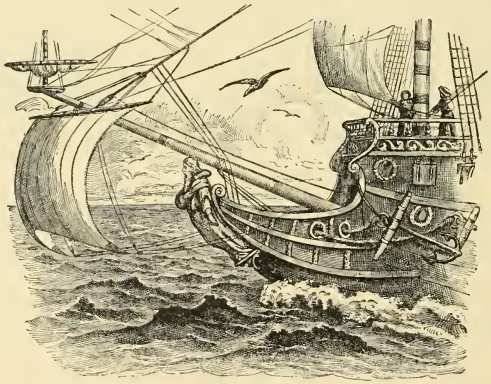
During his administration the Dutch took possession of the Swedish colony in Delaware.

The English sent a British fleet to New Amsterdam in 1664 to demand its surrender, for they claimed the land because of John Cabot's discoveries.

The Dutch surrendered to the English without a struggle on September 3, 1664, and New Amsterdam was renamed New York in honor of James, Duke of York.

The Dutch had won the lasting friendship of the Iroquois, the most important Indian power in America.

This Indian support helped the Dutch and their English successors to prevent the French from obtaining control of America.



Prow of a Dutch Vessel of the Seventeenth Century
Showing the figurehead of St. Nicholas.

XII. SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN AND OTHER FRENCH DISCOVERERS

Champlain: Born 1567 — Died 1635

Once more on the deck I stand
Of my own swift gliding craft.
Set sail! Farewell to the land!
The gale follows fair abaft.
We shoot through the sparkling foam,
Like an ocean bird set free; —
Like the ocean bird, our home
We'll find far out on the sea!
— SARGENT'S "A Life on the Ocean Wave."

We have been following the fortunes of the Spanish, English, and Dutch in the New World. If we turn our attention to France, we find that she had not been idle while other nations were sending men and ships across the Atlantic to make discoveries and to found new colonies. The French monarchs were quite as eager as those of other nations to increase their wealth and power.

Spain and Portugal, because of discoveries of Columbus and others, claimed the entire new territory. To prevent quarrels, the Pope, in 1494, divided as he thought best the "lands discovered or to be discovered." He drew an imaginary line three hundred and seventy leagues (about one thousand miles) west of the Cape Verde Islands; all

lands west of this line were to belong to Spain, all east of it to Portugal. Measured by this line, Brazil was the only part of the New World that Portugal could claim. All the rest belonged to Spain. But of course at that time no one knew the size, shape, or extent of the undiscovered country.

The governments of England and Holland paid no attention to the claims of Spain and Portugal, or to the division of land by the Pope. The French king, Francis I, treated the Spanish and Portuguese claims just as lightly. "I should like you to show me," said he to the kings of these two countries, "that part of Father Adam's will which divides America between you and leaves out the French." And he began to take steps whereby France might get her share.

At about the time that Cortez and Pizarro were conquering the Indians of Mexico and Peru, and stealing their treasures, France sent a vessel to our shores. It was under the command of Verrazano, an Italian.

Verrazano skirted the American coast in 1524, in the vicinity of what is now North Carolina. He then cruised along the Atlantic seaboard to Newfoundland, and was probably the only white man before Henry Hudson to sail into New York Bay. Soon after Verrazano's return, France became engaged in war with Spain, and for the time lost all interest in the new country.

Ten years passed before the French government sent out another exploring expedition. In 1534, and again in 1535, under the command of the jovial, light-hearted Jacques Cartier, French vessels crossed the Atlantic. Reaching Newfoundland, Cartier sailed westward across a gulf to which he gave the name

MAP SHOWING JACQUES CARTIER'S VOYAGES.
Thus: 1st Voyage ——— 2nd Voyage - - - - - 3rd Voyage →→→

St. Lawrence, because the day happened to be the feast-day of that saint.

Later he passed up the St. Lawrence River, where the French found a beautiful, fertile country, inhabited by friendly Indians. At Gaspé, Cartier planted a cross thirty feet high with the inscription, *Vive le Roi de France*, — Long live the King of France. The Indians were alarmed at this unusual

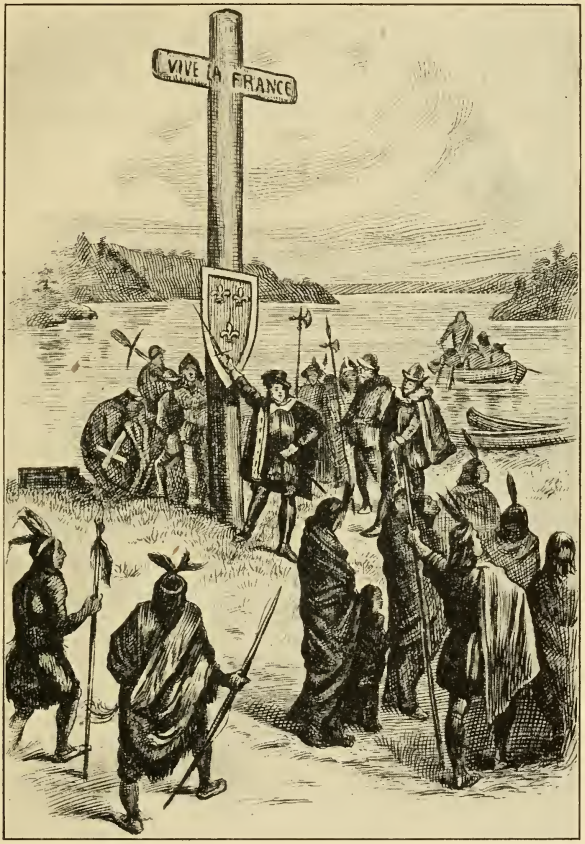
sight, but Cartier explained that it was merely "set up to be as a light and leader" to guide his ship into port when he should come again.

Cartier felt well repaid for his voyages. He had taken possession of the country for the French, and he thought the St. Lawrence might prove to be the pathway to China. He learned from the natives that there was a large Indian town called Hochelaga on the banks of the St. Lawrence, and he resolved to see it. The savages, however, distrusted these strange white men, and did not approve of their plan.

So three Indians disguised themselves as devils, and tried to frighten the Frenchmen by appearing before them with blackened faces and long horns. Cartier only laughed at this ridiculous sight, and spreading his sails proceeded to Hochelaga. He found the town beautifully situated on a high hill on an island in the St. Lawrence River, and Cartier gave it the name of Montreal, or Mount Royal.

The Indians at Hochelaga were delighted with the visit of the white men, who distributed knives, rings, and metal trinkets to the wondering natives. Perhaps these strange palefaces might be able to cure the sick! The chief of the tribe, a helpless old man, was accordingly carried on a mat before Cartier to be healed. The Frenchman was touched by this simple faith, and gladly did all he was able to do. He laid his hands upon the old warrior and offered up a prayer for his recovery.

Cartier at length sailed back to France. Owing to religious wars it was nearly thirty years before



Cartier taking Possession of the Country

that country did anything further in the way of discovery or exploration in America. In the meantime there was much suffering at home. The Huguenots,

as the French Protestants were called, were being cruelly persecuted for daring to hold religious views which differed from those of their king.

Accordingly Coligny, the celebrated leader of the Huguenots, decided to send enough Protestants to America to found a colony. The expedition was in charge of Jean Ribault and sailed from France in 1562, a few years before Sir Francis Drake left England on his first voyage to America.

The Huguenots landed on the coast of South Carolina, and began to build cabins and found a settlement, while Ribault went back to France for more colonists. But, alas, Ribault did not return, and the starving settlers in despair decided to build a ship in which to sail for home. With such crude tools as they possessed, they constructed a strange little craft, using for sails sheets and pieces of clothing. In this frail structure they pluckily put out to sea, and after barely escaping shipwreck were picked up by an English vessel.

Ribault's delay was caused by war at home, and it was two years before Coligny could send out another colony. This time the Frenchmen landed on St. John's River in Florida. Later they were joined by other Huguenots, and the happy colonists thought that at last they had found peace. The king of Spain, however, heard of the little Protestant settlement, and determined to destroy it. He did not mean to allow any French or English

to settle in this country, so he ordered a ship load of soldiers to attack the French colony. Men, women, and children, about seven hundred in all, were mercilessly killed.

It was not until Samuel de Champlain followed Cartier's footsteps to Canada that a permanent French settlement was made in America. Champlain was the son of a ship captain, and had been carefully educated as a navigator. He has been called "one of the most remarkable Frenchmen of his time,— a beautiful character, devout and high-minded, brave and tender." He had served in the French navy, and was a favorite of his monarch, Henry IV.

SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN

Champlain's daring and roving disposition led him to visit the Spanish settlements in the West Indies. He explored a part of Mexico, and, returning by way of Panama, was the first man to suggest building a ship canal across that isthmus. He carefully explored our northeastern coast and gave to many places the names they still bear. In 1603 he explored both banks of the St. Lawrence River, and pressed eagerly forward to find the Indian town of

Hochelaga described by Cartier. But Hochelaga was now a ruin, the little cabins destroyed, the corn-fields waste ground. The explorers soon returned to France.

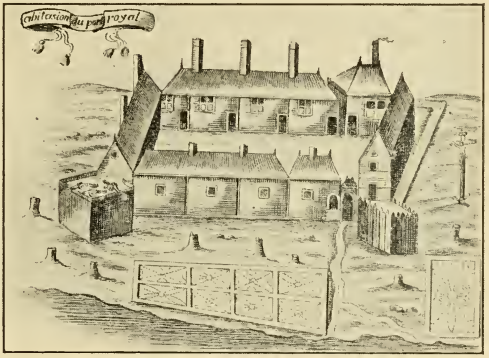
In 1604 Champlain again set sail with a number of colonists for Acadia, as the whole Canadian region was then called. He cruised along the coast of Nova Scotia and landed at a place which he named Port Royal. Sailing around the Bay of Fundy, the explorers entered the mouth of a river which they called St. John's, and finally settled on the island of St. Croix.

Trees were cut down to build houses and barracks, and these were surrounded with a palisade for defense. The pleasant autumn was followed by a long, hard winter, when food, fuel, and fresh water were difficult to obtain on the island. Scurvy broke out, and by spring only forty-four of the seventy-nine colonists were left alive. Had it not been for Champlain's courage and energy, this first little French settlement in Canada would not have survived. Soon another ship, with more settlers, came from France, and the colony was moved to Port Royal, where it was permanently established.

In 1608, the year after the first English colonists came to Virginia, Champlain laid the foundation of Quebec, the first trading post on the St. Lawrence. A few small houses were built around an open square, and outside of these a wooden wall and ditch.

In the center of the square Champlain set up a pole with a dovecote on the top, to show the Indians that his intentions were peaceful. Gardens and small farms were laid out, the Indians were encouraged to bring their furs, and soon the French settlement of Quebec began to grow.

After a while Champlain brought his young wife, a beautiful, devout woman, to the cold little settlement in Acadia. Her name still lives in one of the islands of the St. Lawrence, Helen's Island. She gave herself to the work of converting the Indian women and children, and for five years labored among them with unselfish devotion. "France," says the historian Parkman, "aimed to subdue the natives not by the sword but by the cross. She invaded but to convert, to civilize, and embrace them among her children."



CHAMPLAIN'S PICTURE OF QUEBEC IN 1613

When Champlain first came to Canada he found two powerful bands of Indians, the Hurons and the Algonquins, joined in war against the fierce Iroquois.

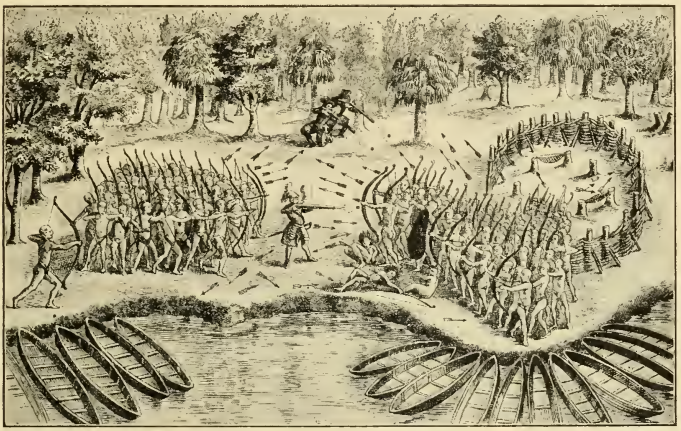
The Hurons were deeply impressed by the guns and armor of the Frenchmen. They begged Champlain, whom they called "the man with the iron breast," to help them in their struggle with the enemy.

The explorer thought that it would be to his advantage to make friends with these Indians, so he promised to give them his support, and to join in an attack which they had planned. On his way to meet the Iroquois, Champlain came out on the beautiful lake that separates northern Vermont and New York. To this sheet of water the Frenchman gave his name, and later he discovered Lakes Huron and Ontario.

The warring tribes came together near the site of Ticonderoga, at the head of Lake Champlain, in 1609. The Iroquois expected to meet only men of their own color, who would fight with the bow and arrow and tomahawk. Imagine their astonishment at the sight of the palefaces, and the noise of the Frenchmen's muskets! Champlain himself killed two Indian chiefs and mortally wounded another, and it was not long before the Iroquois fled in terror, while the joyful war whoops of the Hurons and Algonquins rang through the forest.

Dearly in after years did the Frenchmen pay for this victory, for it brought them the lasting hatred of the Iroquois Indians. These Indians played a very important part in our history, as we shall learn

a little later. They were known as "The Five Nations" because they were divided into five tribes: the Mohawks, the Oneidas, the Onondagas, the Cayugas, and the Senecas. They lived in New York state and were on very friendly terms with the Eng-



THE DEFEAT OF THE IROQUOIS AT LAKE CHAMPLAIN
After the drawing by Champlain, in his "Voyages."

lish and Dutch, with whom they formed an alliance against the French. It was through their aid in after years that the English were able to prevent the French from getting control of New York.

Champlain was governor of Canada until his death. He built fortifications on Richelieu Island, founded the town known as Three Rivers, and established a college for Indians at Quebec, where they were taught the French language. As fur

trading was the principal attraction which drew the Dutch to New York, so it was for a long time the chief interest of the French in Canada. Twenty-two thousand beaver skins were sent in one year from the St. Lawrence to France. The French had also large fisheries at Newfoundland.

When Champlain had reached his sixty-eighth year, he saw in the tiny, but thriving, village of Quebec the fruits of his hard labor. The long struggle to establish a colony in Canada had been successful. He died on Christmas Day, 1635, in the community that he had founded, and his brilliant record still lives. Well had he earned his title, "Father of Canada."

We have now seen that, in the early part of the seventeenth century, the nations of Europe were beginning to covet the American continent. Some one has said: "Here lay the shaggy continent from Florida to the Pole, stretched in savage slumber along the sea. On the bank of the James River was a nest of woe-begone Englishmen, a handful of fur traders at the mouth of the Hudson, and a few shivering Frenchmen among the snowdrifts of Acadia."

THINGS TO REMEMBER

Jacques Cartier, a Frenchman, in 1534 discovered and named the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

In 1564 the French planted a colony on the St. John's River in Florida, but it was destroyed by the Spaniards.

A Frenchman, Samuel de Champlain, was the founder of Canada. He first visited it in 1603.

The first permanent French settlement in America was made at Port Royal, Nova Scotia, in 1607.

Quebec was founded in 1608 by Champlain.

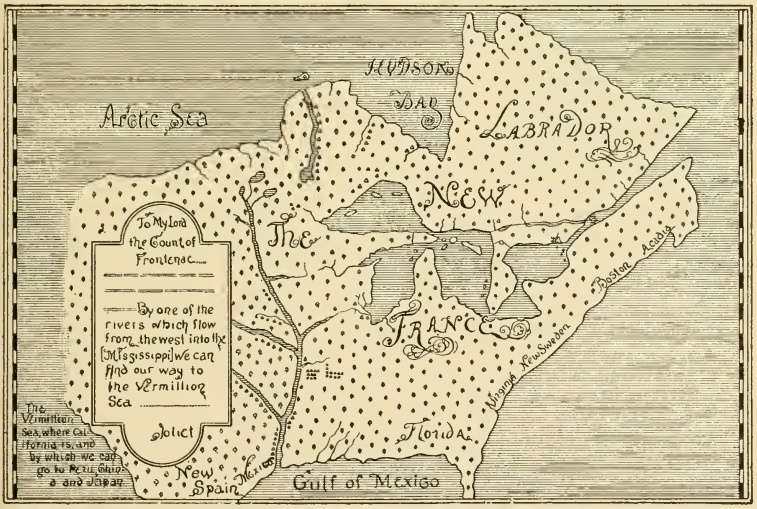
Champlain discovered Lakes Champlain, Ontario, and Huron.

Champlain helped the Huron and Algonquin Indians to defeat the Iroquois at Ticonderoga in 1609.

The Iroquois never forgave the French, and always afterward helped the Dutch and English in their conflicts with the French in America.

The French in Canada carried on an extensive fur trade with the Indians, and established trading posts which afterward became permanent colonies.

Map Work. — Locate Quebec, the Richelieu River, Lake Champlain.



JOLIET'S MAP OF NORTH AMERICA

XIII. ROBERT DE LA SALLE

Born 1643 — Died 1687

We that had loved him so, followed him, honored him,
Lived in his mild and magnificent eye,
Learned his great language, caught his clear accent,
Made him our pattern to live and to die.
— BROWNING'S "The Lost Leader."

IN 1641 three ships sailed across the Atlantic from France and anchored in the St. Lawrence River. They had brought men to establish a settlement at Montreal, at the foot of the stately hill Cartier had discovered. Montreal was destined to grow into a beautiful city, and to hold an important place in Canadian commerce, but for years it was only a small community, struggling for existence.

The people in Quebec and Montreal were devout Catholics, and with the exception of fur trading, their chief thought seemed to be to convert the Indians to the Catholic faith. Jesuit priests came over from France to teach the Indians. These missionaries endured great hardships in their wanderings from tribe to tribe. They suffered from cold, hunger, and exposure, but they never lost courage or cheerfulness. They pushed farther and farther west, and established many missions in the wilderness.

The Iroquois were a source of constant trouble to the French. One of the Jesuit missionaries, Father Jogues, was captured by the savages and cruelly tortured. The Indians took the priest with them on one of their visits to the fur-trading station at Fort Orange, and the Dutch governor helped Jogues to escape and return to France. The priest thrilled his countrymen with the tales of his torture; but with true heroism he returned to Canada and to his work. He was finally captured again by the Indians and put to death for a sorcerer.

A Jesuit Father

By the year 1670 the French had explored as far west as Wisconsin. Three years later a fur trader named Joliet, and a priest, Father Marquette, set out with five companions from a mission on the Strait of Mackinac to find a great river that the Indians called the Father of Waters. The Frenchmen hoped that it might lead to China. They went in canoes across Lake Michigan to Green Bay; then they followed the Fox River until they reached the Wisconsin, and gliding down this stream they came out on the broad Mississippi. "This," said Father Marquette, "is such joy as we cannot express."

The Frenchmen floated with the current down the Mississippi past the mouths of the Illinois, Missouri, and Ohio rivers. They made frequent landings and met many Indians, who, as a rule, were friendly and treated the travelers well.

JAMES MARQUETTE
From the statue by G. Trentenove, in the Capitol at Washington.

At the mouth of the Arkansas River the explorers turned back, having made up their minds that the Father of Waters did not lead to the Pacific Ocean. Without knowing it, they had passed the spot where De Soto, the first explorer of the Mississippi, had found his grave more than a century before.

Joliet and Marquette reached Green Bay in safety. In four months they had covered in canoes more than two thousand miles. For the next six years, however, nothing of importance resulted from this remarkable journey, and no steps were taken toward claiming this rich western country for France.

It was Robert de La Salle, "one of the bravest and most sagacious explorers that ever lived," who explored the Mississippi River to its mouth and there planted the banner of France.

Robert de La Salle

In the year 1666 La Salle came from France to seek his fortune in America. He was the son of an old and rich family and had been carefully educated and surrounded with luxury. He settled at Montreal and began to study the Indian language. Soon he started out to find a pathway to China. Slowly making his way toward the southwest, he explored Lake Ontario, discovered the Ohio River, and sailed down its waters as far as Louisville. Later he traveled northward as far as Lake Michigan and crossed to Illinois.

Louis Joliet

After the bronze relief tablet by E. Kemys in the Marquette Building, Chicago.

After a time La Salle returned to France and obtained permission from King Louis XIV to push explorations in America, to colonize the lands he might discover, and to open trade with the Indians. The young

explorer had little difficulty in interesting his friends and relatives in his proposed ventures in New France, as the French possessions in America were called. He raised a considerable sum of money for the enterprise, and returned to Montreal accompanied by a young friend, Henri de Tonty.

By this time La Salle had entirely given up hope of finding a sea route to China through the continent of America. Henceforth he devoted all his efforts to opening up the interior of the country. His bold idea was to build a chain of forts from Niagara to the mouth of the Mississippi River. These were to grow into settlements of French and Indians, who would carry on a trade in furs, timber, and other products of the new country. Thus would a province many times the size of France be added to the French possessions. Truly this was a great plan.

It was not long before Count Frontenac was appointed governor of Canada. He was a warm friend of La Salle, and the explorer obtained from him a grant of land which included Fort Frontenac, now Kingston, on Lake Ontario.

Four years later, in 1677, La Salle began his famous exploration of the Mississippi Valley. He and his companions proceeded as far as Niagara, where they stopped for the winter and built a small vessel. On her prow was carved a great monster, a griffin, taken from Count Frontenac's coat-of-arms,

and the vessel was called the *Griffin*. It was the first ship ever launched on the Great Lakes.

In the summer the explorers sailed through Lakes

LANDING OF LA SALLE'S EXPEDITION AT MONTREAL
From an engraving in Hennepin's "Voyages."

Erie, Huron, and Michigan. The simple Indians along the banks of these inland waters were speechless with astonishment when they beheld this ship with its white sails. Never before had they seen a boat larger than a canoe.

From Lake Michigan, La Salle sent the *Griffin*, loaded with furs, back to Niagara, and instructed his men to return with a supply of provisions. With the remainder of his company the explorer worked his way through the forests to the Illinois River. Not far from the present town of Peoria, the men built a fort, and because of their hardships and suffering, they called it Crèvecœur, meaning Heartbreak. The *Griffin* did not return, and it was never known whether she had been wrecked, or was deserted by the crew in order that they might barter the furs for their own profit.

The loss of the *Griffin* was indeed a severe blow, but La Salle was a man of determination, and he began to plan a way out of the difficulty. Intrusting the little band of men to the care of Tonty, the explorer set out on foot in 1680 for Fort Frontenac.

In spite of cold and snow, the thick tangle of the forest, and insufficient food, he pushed bravely forward, with an Indian hunter and four Frenchmen as companions. Often they tramped for miles through blinding storms, their clothing frozen stiff; at other times, in crossing marshes, they would wade waist-deep through mud and water. La Salle was obliged to leave his worn-out companions on the way, and was nearly exhausted when a familiar sight greeted his eyes; before him loomed the gray walls of Fort Frontenac. He had walked a distance of one thousand miles.

But continued misfortune pursued this brave man. For a long time many had been jealous of him, and he found bitter enemies on all sides who tried in every way to crush him. Once he was poisoned and barely escaped death. He now found that his agents had plundered him, and that creditors had

BUILDING THE "GRIFFIN"

From an engraving in Hennepin's "Nouvelle Découverte."

seized his property. Before he could start back with provisions and men for the relief of Tonty and his party, La Salle heard further disastrous news.

From two exploring traders he learned that soon after his departure from the Illinois, nearly all the men had deserted Tonty and destroyed the fort. These mutineers, it was said, were now on the coast of Lake Ontario watching for La Salle in order to kill him. La Salle immediately chose nine trusted

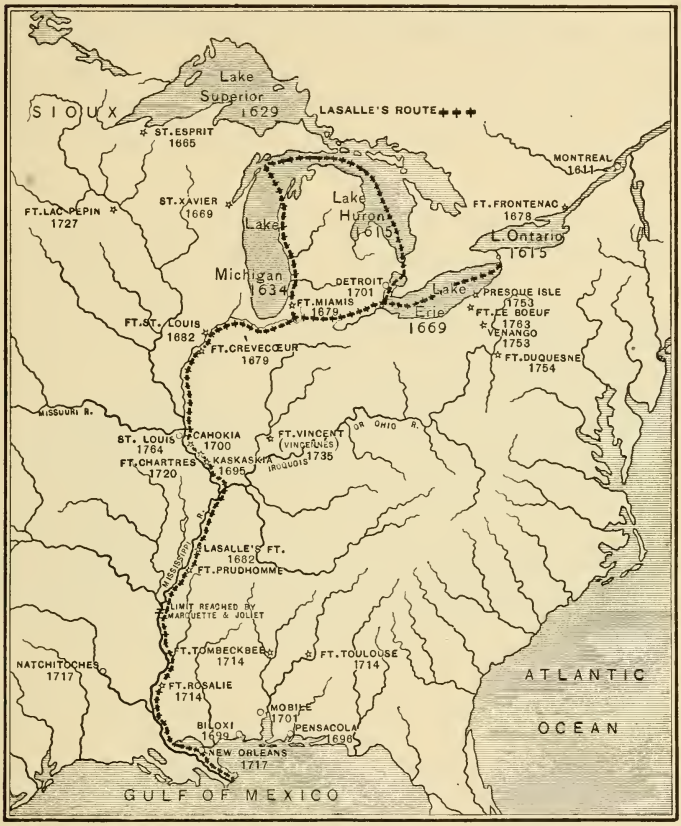
men, and hastened to meet the deserters. Soon his canoes overtook those of the faithless Frenchmen, who were captured and punished.

La Salle's chief thought was now of Tonty. Was he alive? And had the handful of men who remained true been able to survive the dangers of the wilderness? On the 10th of August, 1680, La Salle once more set out for the Illinois, taking with him twenty-five men. The long journey was made in safety, but, alas, the camp was in ruins, and the explorer found that the Iroquois Indians had swept over the Illinois country, spreading terror and destruction in their path.

In every direction, far and near, did La Salle search for some clew to the missing men, but none could he find. He made friends with the Miami Indians and other neighboring tribes, and then started once more for Montreal. He was still determined to raise enough men and supplies to carry out his plan for establishing settlements. Imagine his joy when, on reaching Mackinac on Lake Michigan, he found his lost comrade! Tonty had escaped from the Indians, and was making a brave struggle to reach Fort Frontenac.

The two friends traveled together to Niagara, where discouraging news again greeted La Salle. A ship from France, carrying several thousand dollars for his use, had been wrecked and the money lost. No amount of ill luck, however, could turn

this heroic man from the course he had determined upon, and it is not long until we find him starting



Map of Country explored by La Salle

on another expedition. Accompanied by Tonty and a party of French and Indians, he proceeded by way of Lakes Erie, Huron, and Michigan,

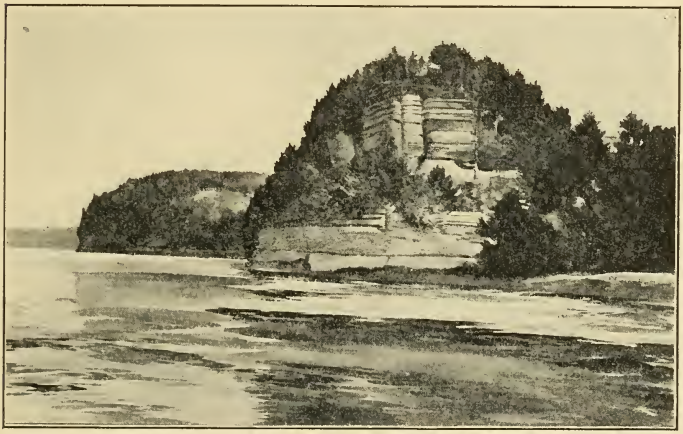
thence through the Chicago and Illinois rivers to the Mississippi.

As the canoes sped over this broad river, the Frenchmen viewed with delight the level prairie lands and miles of forest. Herds of buffalo and deer came down to drink at the water's edge, and only the cries of birds and wild animals broke the stillness.

On the 9th of April, 1682, they arrived at the mouth of the Father of Waters, and looked out over the great Gulf of Mexico, "tossing its restless billows, lonely, without a sail, without a sign of life." A short distance above the mouth of the river the party landed. With impressive ceremonies, La Salle planted the banner of France, and in the name of the king took possession of the whole valley of the Mississippi, naming the region Louisiana, or Louis's land. This included all the territory lying between the Alleghany and Rocky mountains.

The next step was to establish a fortified post at the mouth of the river, to guard the Mississippi valley against the Spanish and English. As a beginning toward this and the colony he hoped soon to establish, La Salle directed the cutting away of the forest, and the building of cabins and a storehouse for furs. On the top of a cliff a palisade was erected, and the fort named St. Louis. "La Salle looked down from his rock on a scene

of wild human life. Lodges of bark and rushes, or cabins of logs were clustered on the open plain or along the edges of the bordering forests. Squaws labored, warriors lounged in the sun, naked children whooped and gamboled on the grass. Beyond the river, the banks were studded with the lodges of the Illinois Indians."



THE SITE OF FORT ST. LOUIS
On the top of this rock on the Illinois River La Salle built his stronghold.

When Fort St. Louis was finished La Salle made his way back to Montreal, and from there sailed to France to lay his plans before the king. Although he was as brave as a lion in the wilderness, the explorer had a shy, reserved nature. He preferred to lodge in a poor street, and to meet few people. He had

many misgivings about asking the king for help to plant a colony in Louisiana, but his request had come at the right moment. For a long time the king had been angered because the Spaniards had forbidden French vessels to trade at Spanish ports in America, or to enter the Gulf of Mexico. French sailors who had dared to enter the gulf had been seized and imprisoned. Now war had been declared between France and Spain, and here was La Salle ready to help break the power of Spain in America. King Louis, therefore, willingly placed at La Salle's command a French squadron of four vessels.

With a light heart La Salle set sail for the Gulf of Mexico. As we know, he had reached the mouth of the Mississippi by coming from the north, but he had never seen it from the gulf. He had not doubted, however, that he should be able to find it; but all his efforts were vain. He passed the spot for which he was so anxiously looking, and landed on the coast of Texas, probably at Matagorda Bay, four hundred miles west of the mouth of the river.

Truly this explorer has been well called "a man of iron," for he immediately set to work to build a fort and make his little band of colonists comfortable; then he started out to find the lost river. Now followed two long years of bitter disappointment and disaster. One of the vessels, loaded with supplies, was wrecked through the treachery of the crew; the others sailed

back to France and left La Salle and his colonists alone.

Week after week, month after month, he tried to find the Mississippi, that he might ascend it, reach Montreal, and procure help. In 1687, when near a branch of the Trinity River, some of his men, desperate from continued hardship, resolved to take his life. They hid themselves in the tall grass and waited for an opportunity to shoot their leader. Thus died the great La Salle in the land for which he had dared and suffered so much.

A few of La Salle's companions succeeded in reaching Fort St. Louis on the Illinois, and bitterly did the noble Tonty grieve when he learned of the death of his friend. These Frenchmen at last found their way back to Montreal, but nothing was ever heard of the few colonists left at the fort in Texas.

"Where La Salle had plowed, others were to sow the seed." His great plan was carried out, and settlements were established from the Great Lakes to the Gulf of Mexico. By 1689 the French were in possession of the broad valleys of the St. Lawrence and the Mississippi, and were watching for an opportunity to seize the land in the Hudson valley. They feared that the English would reach the Great Lakes and become rivals in the rich fur trade of the northwest. But standing like watch dogs guarding New York state were the Five Nations, ready always to fight their old enemies and to help their friends, the English.

Things to Remember

Montreal was founded by the French in 1641.

The French possessions in America were called New France.

Marquette and Joliet discovered the Mississippi River in 1673, and explored it as far as the Arkansas River.

The first white man to explore the Mississippi River to its mouth was Robert de La Salle.

In 1682 La Salle planted the banner of France at the mouth of the river, and claimed that whole section for the French.

He named the country Louisiana, in honor of King Louis XIV. Louisiana then included all the land between the Alleghany and Rocky mountains, from the Great Lakes to the Gulf of Mexico.

La Salle tried to build a chain of forts, or settlements, across America from the Great Lakes to the Gulf of Mexico.

Map Work. — Trace on a map the journey of La Salle from Fort Frontenac (Kingston) to the Gulf of Mexico.

XIV. LORD BALTIMORE

George Calvert, first Lord Baltimore: Born about 1582 — Died 1632
Cecil Calvert, second Lord Baltimore: Born 1605 — Died 1675

Spread, spread thy silver wings, O Dove!
And seek for rest by land and sea,
And bring the tidings back to me,
For thee and me and those I love.

— PROCTER'S "Rest."

BEFORE continuing the history of the French in America, let us see how much of the country England had settled by the year 1689. While the French were establishing themselves in Canada and the West, what colonies had the English planted in the East and South outside of Virginia, New England, New York, and New Jersey?

There dwelt in London in the days of King James a wise and just Englishman named George Calvert. He had been educated at Oxford, had spent much time in travel, and held important offices in the English government. King James thought so highly of him that he made him a peer of Ireland with the title, Lord Baltimore.

For many years Calvert had been deeply interested in the settlements in the New World. Roman Catholics were not well treated in England in those days, and as Lord Baltimore was a Catholic he re-

solved to establish in the New World a colony of his own, where those of his faith would be welcome.

In 1621 he obtained from the king a grant of land in Newfoundland. Lord Baltimore named it Avalon, and here he started a colony and built a fine house for himself. But he found the climate much colder than he had expected. There was fog winter and summer, and the soil was so poor that very little would grow. Furthermore, he was constantly in danger of being attacked by the French. He wrote to a friend in England: "I came to build and settle and sow, but am fallen to fighting with Frenchmen."

Lord Baltimore had been at one time a member of the Virginia Company and had heard a great deal about the balmy winds and clear skies of Virginia. He now resolved to visit these southern shores, and with a few friends he sailed across the Atlantic, landed at Jamestown, and later explored Chesapeake Bay.

He had hoped for a hearty welcome from the Virginians, but in this he was disappointed. They knew that Lord Baltimore wished to found a colony near their own, and they would not tolerate the idea. Their distinguished visitor, however, was so delighted with the beautiful scenery and agreeable climate that he did not allow the inhospitality of the Jamestown settlers to chill his enthusiasm. He sailed for home and procured from the new king,

Charles I, a grant including the land now contained in the states of Maryland and Delaware, which both the Dutch and the Swedes had hoped to occupy.

The king asked in payment for these twelve thousand square miles of land one fifth of all the gold and silver that should be mined. He also required that two Indian arrows be sent each spring to his palace at Windsor, as a pledge of loyalty.

CECIL CALVERT, LORD BALTIMORE
After a portrait in the British Public Record Office.

Before the charter was signed Lord Baltimore died, but the idea of a Catholic colony was not abandoned. Calvert's eldest son, Cecil, succeeded to the title, and became the second Lord Baltimore. He was as generous and noble as his father, and was eager to carry out his father's plan. Soon arrangements were completed, but, as business interests in England prevented Cecil Calvert from going to America himself, he appointed his brother governor of the new province, which in the charter had been called Mary's Land, in honor of the queen, Henrietta Maria.

In the winter of 1634 two little vessels, the *Ark*

and the *Dove*, carrying between two and three hundred colonists, sailed from Cowes, and after a stormy voyage arrived in February at Point Comfort, Virginia. They then sailed up Chesapeake Bay and the Potomac River and landed on a small island, where they raised a cross, and kneeling around it gave thanks for their safe journey.

After making some explorations the colonists settled near the junction of the Potomac and St. Mary's rivers, where they purchased from the friendly Indians a half-deserted village, which they paid for in cloth, hoes, and hatchets. The natives treated the newcomers as kindly as they had at first treated the Virginia colonists. They taught the white strangers how to hunt in the dense forest and to plant corn. The squaws taught the wives of the settlers how to make bread of corn meal.

The Indians had called their village Yoacomico, but the English renamed it St. Mary's. Although the settlement was intended chiefly for Catholics, all Christian denominations were welcome. Many Quakers driven out of Virginia took refuge in Maryland. There were two priests in the colony who at once became interested in converting the Indians, and as the purchase of the Indian settlement had included its wigwams, one of these was used for a church.

King Charles allowed Lord Baltimore great freedom in the management of the colony. All the laws

were made by him, or by the men whom he appointed, and his son was to inherit his power.

The Maryland colonists had been fortunate enough to arrive in the spring, and, as they procured land which had already been cleared, they were at once able to plant cornfields and gardens.

CALVERT MAKING A TREATY WITH THE INDIANS

A FAMILY OF COLONISTS VIEWING THE SHIPS

After the paintings by C. Y. Turner in the Baltimore courthouse.

In the autumn the *Dove* was loaded with corn and sent to Boston, where the cargo was traded for dried fish and other supplies. From Virginia the Marylanders could get domestic cattle, as well as food, and the colony at St. Mary's, therefore, did not suffer the hardship that the Jamestown and Plymouth settlers had endured. It was prosperous from the very start.

But there came a time when the happiness of

Maryland was disturbed. Captain William Claiborne of Virginia had obtained permission from the king to explore this southern country and to engage in fur trade with the natives. He had formed a settlement on Kent Island in Chesapeake Bay, in the very heart of Maryland. Lord Baltimore claimed that under his grant Claiborne had no right to Kent Island or to any part of Maryland, and quarrels arose which led to bloodshed. Claiborne has been called "the evil genius of Maryland." He had no charter giving him the land, only a license to establish a trading post and to make discoveries. But in spite of this he continued for years to give the Maryland colonists trouble, and at one time the governor was obliged to flee to Virginia for safety. In 1658 the English government decided that the Calverts and not Claiborne were entitled to Maryland, and peace was restored.

For more than one hundred years a Calvert was at the head of the Maryland colony, but the question of whether Protestants or Catholics should rule came up again and again, and was not finally settled until 1714, when the fourth Lord Baltimore turned Protestant.

Notwithstanding its trouble with Claiborne and its religious disagreements, Maryland continued to grow in numbers and wealth. In less than thirty years after its foundation the three hundred settlers that had at first lived in Indian wigwams had

EUROPEAN COLONIES--ABOUT 1650

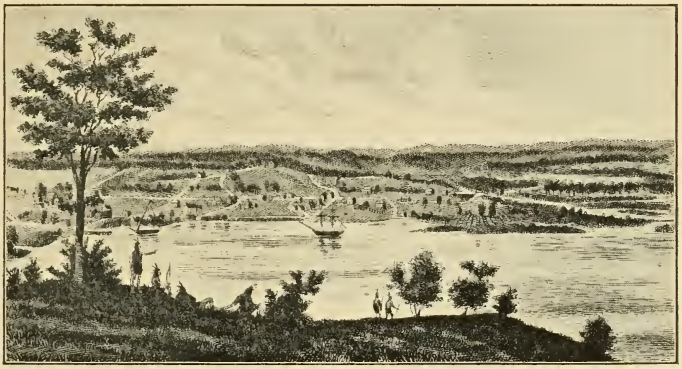
increased to ten thousand. It adopted many of the habits of its neighbor, Virginia. Both colonies contained wealthy planters, who lived in large brick houses and were famous for their hospitality.

"Planters' tables you must know
Are free to all that come and go."

As there were so many rivers, creeks, and inlets along Chesapeake Bay, the planters depended upon boats to go from place to place, and the building of roads was neglected. But, if there were no highways, there were numerous bridle paths running in every direction through the forest, and every man, woman, and child could ride. Both Virginia and Maryland were slow in establishing schools. Both were slaveholders, and their chief industry was tobacco raising. The use of tobacco as money in the payment of bills seems strange to us. But long years after the period we are studying the Maryland statehouse was purchased for forty thousand dollars' worth of tobacco.

Cecil Calvert died in 1675, deeply mourned by his devoted colonists, who praised him for "his unwearied care to preserve them in the enjoyment of their lives, liberties, and fortunes." At the time of his death there were nearly twenty thousand colonists in Maryland. In 1729 a new town was founded and named in his honor Baltimore. This has grown into a beautiful city, and is now one of the most important seaports on the Atlantic coast.

We have thus seen that Maryland was founded by a proprietor, and not by one of the companies such as had laid the beginnings of Virginia and Massachusetts. The kings who gave grants of land to American settlers knew very little about this new country, and often territory given in one



BALTIMORE IN 1752
After an engraving in Scharf's "History of Baltimore."

grant would overlap the land that had been named in another charter. In the early history of America there were many quarrels over boundary lines, and there was much dispute between Maryland and Pennsylvania as to where the line between them should be drawn. The question was finally settled in 1767 by two English surveyors, Charles Mason and Jeremiah Dixon. This boundary afterward became famous; for, when the Northern states gave up slavery, it happened that "Mason and Dixon's line"

divided the slave states of the Union from those that believed all slaves should be freed.

Things to Remember

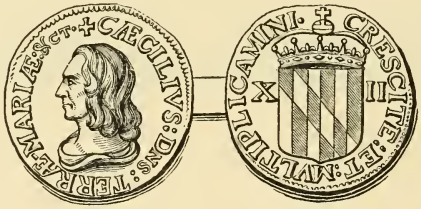
Maryland was founded in 1634 by the second Lord Baltimore.

The territory was called Maryland in honor of the queen, Henrietta Maria, wife of Charles I. The first settlement was St. Mary's.

The city of Baltimore, founded in 1729, was named for the founder of Maryland.

The boundary line between Maryland and Pennsylvania was called "Mason and Dixon's line." It became famous as a dividing line between the states that believed in slavery and those that held all men should be free.

Map Work. — Locate the Chesapeake Bay, the Potomac River, St. Mary's.



A Maryland Shilling

XV. WILLIAM PENN AND THE QUAKERS

Penn : Born 1644 — Died 1718

The Quaker of the olden time,
How calm and firm and true.
Unspotted by its wrong and crime,
He walked the dark earth through.
— WHITTIER'S "The Quaker of the Olden Time."

AMONG the people who suffered in England in the early times because of their religious beliefs, none were more persecuted than the Quakers. Their founder was George Fox, a young English shepherd. While Fox tended his sheep on the hillside, his mind dwelt on serious matters, and he thought much about religion. He came to believe that every person, high or low, rich or poor, is given light from heaven for his own guidance, and that it is his duty to obey the light as it comes to him.

In spite of ridicule and abuse Fox began to preach, and soon had many followers. He was often imprisoned, but his faith remained unshaken. He kept on preaching that every man is the equal of every other, that we are all brothers, and that a king is no better than a laborer.

In the same way that the Pilgrims and Puritans

had separated from the Established Church, because they wished to simplify and purify their religion, so the Quakers withdrew, and formed the Society of Friends. They addressed every person as "Friend," and they used the terms "thee" and "thou" instead of "you."

A Quaker of the 17th Century

In place of regular church services the Quakers held "meetings." There was neither music nor sermon, but the people silently waited for a communication direct from God. When one felt that he had received such a message, he would rise and tell it to the others.

The Friends would not take an oath of any kind to bind themselves to a promise or agreement; for they said that a man's word was as good as an oath. Since they believed all men were equal, they would not take off their hats, even in the presence of a judge or king. Their clothing was drab in color and of the plainest cut. They loved quiet and thought wars were wrong, and that all men should live at peace. Consequently, they refused to serve in the army or navy, or to pay taxes for their support. It will readily be seen that the unusual beliefs of the Quakers and their refusal to obey the law of their country soon brought about serious trouble.

These were stern fighting days, when the nations of Europe were almost constantly at war, and the peace-loving Quakers were laughed at and scorned. And not only were they ridiculed; in England and New England they were shamefully abused. Hundreds were thrown into prison, some were hanged, and many more died from cruel treatment. The Puritans in Massachusetts showed them as little mercy as the English in the mother country. Quakers were flogged on Boston Common, burned with hot irons, and driven from the community. Many fled to New Jersey and started settlements of their own.

WILLIAM PENN
At the age of 22. After the portrait attributed to Sir Peter Lely.

In the year 1644, there was born in London a boy whose name was William Penn. He was destined to become one of the greatest Quakers of all time. His father was an admiral in the English navy, a wealthy and respected man. As the years went by, young William entered Oxford University, and was known there as a faithful student and a splendid oarsman. He was ready for sport of every

kind, handsome, strong-willed, but with a sweetness of character that endeared him to all who knew him.

One day Penn happened to hear a Quaker talk, and from that time he declared himself a Friend. Because of his new religious belief, he refused to attend the regular services of the college. His companions ridiculed him, and spoke of him as "a Quaker, or some other melancholy thing," but this had no effect upon Penn. He refused also to wear the college gown, preferring the simple dress of the Friends. The college authorities would not tolerate his disobedience, and young Penn was expelled.

Admiral Penn was very angry with his son for bringing such disgrace upon the family. He considered that the boy's religious notions were the greatest folly, something that he would quickly forget if he were placed in new surroundings, free from Quaker influence. "I will send him to France," said the admiral, "and there he will forget all about the foolish Quakers."

Accordingly, William found himself not long afterward in Paris, and in the gay life of the French capital there was little time for religious devotion. He was a very attractive youth, just eighteen years old, tall and strong, with a frank, honest face, and beautiful brown hair that fell in curls on his shoulders. He was presented at court, spent much time in the fashionable world, and studied with an able French scholar.

Returning to London after two years, he took up the study of law. But soon a terrible plague broke out, and again the mind of the young man turned to the religion of the Friends. This so angered his father that he refused even to see his son; but William continued to attend Quaker meetings and wrote books on the Quaker belief. Finally, the London authorities imprisoned him, with several of his companions, in the gloomy old Tower. But, when Penn was released after several months, he was just as strong a Quaker as ever. A year or two afterward he was again imprisoned, and again released.

At length, in 1674, he became greatly interested in the colonies in the New World. A small settlement of Friends had been made in New Jersey, and Penn had helped to end a dispute that had there arisen over the division of land. He had also been one of a company of Quakers that had purchased a part of New Jersey from the Carteret family. Lord Baltimore had founded in America a home for persecuted Catholics. Why should not Penn make a home in this new country for his persecuted Quaker friends?

By this time Admiral Penn had died, leaving a large fortune to his son, and saying that he forgave him, and loved him all the more for having had the courage to suffer for his faith. About eighty thousand dollars was owed to William Penn by the Eng-

lish government. King Charles II was not at all fond of parting with his money, so Penn proposed that he should receive land in America in payment of the debt. Accordingly, Charles gladly signed a charter, giving Penn forty thousand square miles of the wild land west of the Delaware River, the largest tract in America ever given to one person.

With this light-hearted monarch Penn was on the best of terms. It is said that the first time the king met Penn in his Quaker dress, he was much amused to see that his friend kept his head covered. Charles removed his own hat, whereupon Penn asked, "Friend Charles, why dost thou remove thy hat?" "Because," laughingly replied the king, "it is customary for only one person to remain covered in my presence."

Penn proposed to give the name Sylvania to his land in the New World, but the king insisted that, in memory of the admiral, Penn's father, it should be called Pennsylvania, meaning Penn's Wood.

In September, 1682, Penn set sail from England in the *Welcome* accompanied by two other vessels. In October the little fleet reached Newcastle on the Delaware River, where the Swedes gave them a hearty welcome. Penn divided his land into sections, and sold it to the colonists at a very low price.

He next chose, as a site for his capital, a strip of land between the Delaware and Schuylkill rivers.

He found, however, that this tract was claimed by the Swedes, who had purchased it of the Indians and had built a little hamlet upon it, called Wicaco. Penn, therefore, paid the Swedes for it, and renamed the settlement Philadelphia, or "Brotherly Love."

PENN MAKING A TREATY WITH THE INDIANS
After the painting by West.

Penn allowed the colonists a large share in the government. "You shall be ruled," said he, "by laws of your own making, and live a free, and, if you will, a sober and industrious people." He desired "to show men how free and happy they can be." He insisted that no person who believed in God should be persecuted on account of his religion, and that the Indians should be treated justly and kindly. He further required that the village should

be laid out in wide streets, many of which were named from trees that shaded them, such as Walnut, Spruce, and Chestnut. Each building lot was large enough to allow plenty of ground around the dwelling.

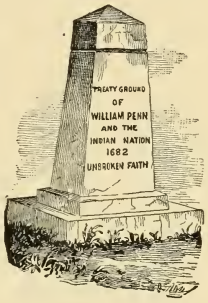
Although the king had granted Penn the land, the latter thought the Indians should be paid for it, so he gave them enough blankets, knives, and trinkets to make them feel well treated. One of Penn's first acts was to make with the red men a treaty which has since become famous.

Under a large elm tree, at a place called Shackamaxon, on the Delaware River, the Friend met his Indian neighbors. He told the listening savages that they came together "on the pathway of good faith and good will," and that he intended that everything between them should be "openness and love." The Indians were deeply impressed by his kind words and gentle manner, and replied, "We will live in love with William Penn and his children as long as the sun and moon shall shine."

This treaty the natives carefully recorded in a wampum belt, still in existence. It consists of eighteen strings of black and white beads, in which are woven two figures clasping hands. These are supposed to represent an Indian and an Englishman, with hands joined in friendship. Some one has said: "It was the only treaty never sworn to, and the only one never broken." Though the

Indians waged bitter war on the other colonies, they never shed a drop of Quaker blood during the years that the Friends controlled Pennsylvania. The elm tree under which Penn met the Indians was still standing in 1810; the spot is now marked by a stone.

Once a band of Indians found two strange white men asleep in the woods. The younger members of the party were about to disturb the sleepers, but the old warriors said: "These men are English, and they are our friends; let them alone." Penn often visited the natives in their dirty wigwams, and ate with them. When some of the younger savages were having a contest in running, jumping, and leaping, Penn joined in the sport, and to their great astonishment outdid them all. After that their admiration for him became still greater.



PENN'S TREATY MONUMENT

From the first Philadelphia attracted large numbers from all countries and of all beliefs. There were English, Swedes, Dutch, Germans, Scotch, Irish. At the time of its purchase, the little tract of clear ground was surrounded by a boundless forest, through which the frightened deer ran from the invading settlers. Within a year, one hundred houses had been built; in two years Phila-

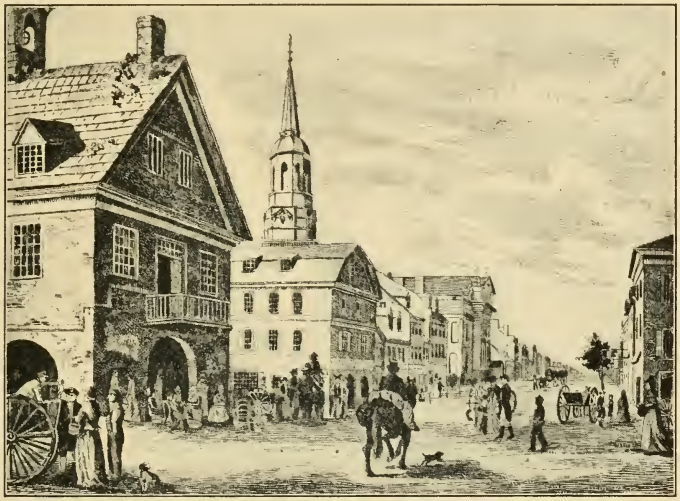
delphia had two thousand inhabitants; and in three it had grown more than the city of New York grew in its first fifty years.

Before the close of the seventeenth century, Philadelphia contained many handsome brick houses and fine squares and courts. The people were happy and prosperous, and it was said that there was not a beggar in the city. This undoubtedly was largely due to the wise rule of Penn, that every child should be taught some trade, so that when he grew up he might earn his own living.

After a time business matters recalled Penn to England. Among other things, he wished to have the question of the boundary line between his land and Lord Baltimore's settled by the king. He was justly proud of the condition of his colony. "We are the wonder of our neighbors," said the happy founder. The settlers were sorrowful at his departure, and his affection for them was shown in his parting words: "Dear friends, my love salutes you all."

Penn took up his residence in Kensington, and, through his great influence with the king, thousands of imprisoned Quakers were set at liberty. Many years later, in company with his wife and daughter, Penn returned to Pennsylvania. His town residence was on what is now Second Street, between Chestnut and Walnut. It was a spacious house, with a slate roof, beautifully furnished with

massive pieces of mahogany and walnut brought from England. There were "plushes, satins, and even carpets, which were enjoyed by few but princes in those days." The dining hall would seat a large number, but Penn's hospitality was so great that



The First Town Hall and Court House, Philadelphia

often his guests would overflow into the adjoining rooms. He once gave a dinner for which one hundred roast turkeys were provided. In this fine mansion his son John was born, the only one of his children who was a native American. Penn had also a beautiful country house on the Delaware River.

But again Penn was obliged to return to England. His business had been mismanaged by a dis-

honest agent, and the great and good man, who had done so much for others, found himself on the verge of bankruptcy. His affairs were in such serious condition that he was even thrown into Fleet Prison for debt. This villainy on the part of a trusted agent, and the disgrace and confinement of prison life, shattered Penn's health. He died in England, in 1718, after a long illness, and lies buried in the churchyard of a little Quaker meeting house, not many miles from London.

The Indians, as well as the colonists, were very sad when they heard of the death of their friend. The Indians sent Mrs. Penn the choicest furs that could be found. "These," they said, "are for a cloak to protect you while passing through this thorny wilderness without your guide."

Little did King Charles dream, when he granted his young Quaker friend a tract of land in the forest of America nearly as large as England, that he had parted with an immense fortune. Could he have known that underneath Penn's Wood there were vast mines of coal and iron, worth millions of dollars, the Quaker colonists would probably never have built their cozy homes and tilled their little farms in Pennsylvania.

Things to Remember

Pennsylvania was founded by William Penn, an Englishman, in 1682.

Pennsylvania means Penn's Wood.

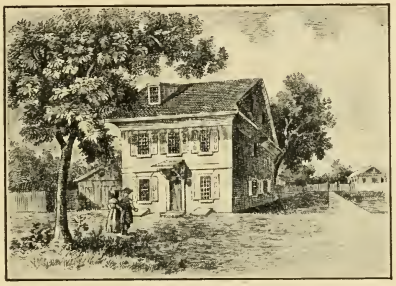
William Penn was a Quaker. He founded the colony in Pennsylvania as a refuge for persecuted Quakers.

Philadelphia was the first settlement. The word means "Brotherly Love."

Penn made a famous treaty with the Indians, which was never broken.

People from many countries besides England found a welcome in Pennsylvania.

Map Work. — Note the location of Philadelphia between the Schuylkill and the Delaware. Why was it a good place for a city?



LETITIA COTTAGE, PENN'S CITY RESIDENCE

Parts of it were prepared in England and shipped to Philadelphia. From Watson's "Annals of Philadelphia."

XVI. JAMES OGLETHORPE

Born 1689 — Died 1785

Peace to the just man's memory; let it grow
Greener with years, and blossom through the flight
Of ages; let the mimic canvas show
His calm benevolent features; let the light
Stream on his deeds of love.

— BRYANT'S "The Ages."

WE have seen that the chief reason for founding colonies in America was the desire for freedom from persecution and for greater political liberty. The colony of Georgia, whose founder was James Oglethorpe, was likewise started largely for the purpose of helping the unfortunate and oppressed.

James Oglethorpe belonged to an old and respected English family. When his college days were over, he joined the army, served under the great Duke of Marlborough, and later was made a general.

Now it happened that in England at that time there was a law which made it possible to send a man to jail for debt. The prisons were wretched places, dismal, dirty, and unhealthful. Every year thousands of men were confined in them, simply because they had the misfortune to be poor and in debt. Unless their families or friends brought them food, they were left to starve.

One day an unfortunate friend of General Oglethorpe, having failed in business, was seized and thrown into prison. Oglethorpe had been for some time deeply interested in the condition of the English prisons, and he now became more active than

KING'S BENCH PRISON, LONDON

A poor debtor's prison of the eighteenth century.

ever in his investigations. He found such dreadful conditions that his kind heart was filled with pity, and he made up his mind that the prisoners should be released, and those who were willing to work given a fresh start amid new surroundings. How could men earn money to pay their debts while confined in foul jails?

At length General Oglethorpe thought of a plan, which he proposed to King George. "Let us," said

he, "form a colony in America, where these distressed people may be given another chance to make their way in the world." The plan was carefully discussed, and it was decided to plant such a colony near South Carolina. North and South Carolina were young settlements of English, Germans, Scotch, Irish, and French Huguenots. They were in constant fear of attack from the Spaniards in Florida, and would welcome neighbors. The proposed new colony, therefore, would provide another military post against England's old enemy, and against hostile Indians. Persecuted Protestants from all the countries of Europe were to be allowed to join it.

In the one hundred and twenty-six years that had passed since Captain John Smith and his English companions landed at Jamestown, twelve colonies had been planted along the Atlantic seaboard from Maine to Florida. In New England were Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island, and New Hampshire; in what we now call the Middle States, New York, New Jersey, Delaware, and Pennsylvania, and in the South, Virginia, Maryland, North Carolina, and South Carolina.

In 1732, the year in which George Washington was born, plans for the new colony were completed. The English government gave Oglethorpe two thousand pounds, and another large sum was raised by generous friends. The king then granted to

THE COLONIES IN 1734

the general and his associates, "in trust for the poor," a charter of the territory lying on the sea-coast below South Carolina, between the Savannah and Altamaha rivers. In honor of the English ruler, this land was to be called Georgia. Oglethorpe was to act as governor of the colony.

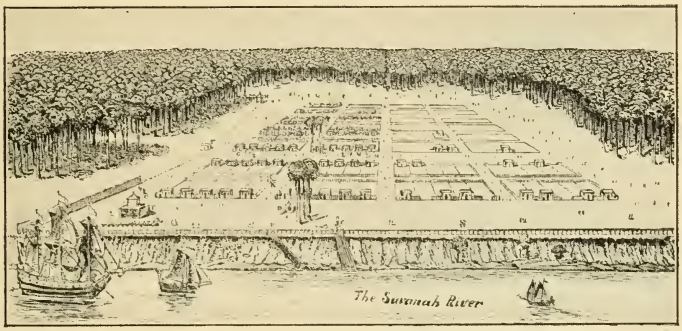
With about one hundred and twenty happy emigrants, General Oglethorpe set sail in the *Anne* in the winter of 1732, and early in January arrived safely at Charleston. There were thirty-five families in all, and among the men were carpenters, bricklayers, farmers, and mechanics.

After exploring the lovely Savannah River, Oglethorpe chose a site on a high bluff, and laid the foundation of a little town, now the beautiful city of Savannah. Imagine the joy of these released prisoners in their new-found freedom! The sound of the ax rang through the woods, and cabins were quickly built. Oglethorpe marked out broad streets, and left plenty of room for public squares and parks.

The governor was very successful in keeping peace with the Indians. He paid them for their land and gave them many presents. His dignified appearance, his kindness and mercy, and his sweet nature won their confidence. A chief of one of the tribes presented him with a buffalo skin, on the inside of which was painted in rude Indian fashion the head of an eagle. "The feathers of the eagle are soft and signify love," said the warrior, "and the

warm buffalo skin means protection; therefore love and protect our families."

One day Red Shoes, another chief, appeared in the English settlement. "We have come a great way," said the Indian, "and we are a great nation. The French are building forts around us against our



EARLY SAVANNAH, GEORGIA
From a London print dated 1741.

liking. We have long traded with them, but they are poor in goods; we desire to trade with you." Soon Oglethorpe could write home that the Indians "for seven hundred miles" were friends of the Georgia colonists.

The English in Georgia were joined by many Scotch Highlanders, and by a number of Germans. As these settlers were hard-working, thrifty people, they were very welcome. "General Oglethorpe's undertaking will succeed," wrote the governor of South Carolina, "for he nobly devotes all his powers to rescue the poor from their wretchedness."

When the colony was well started, the governor went back to England, taking with him Tomochichi, an Indian chief whose friendship had been of the greatest service to Georgia. When the governor returned in 1736, three hundred men and women came with him, and among the number was the celebrated leader of the Methodists, John Wesley. "They all knelt and returned thanks to God for having safely arrived in Georgia." A new town was now started at Frederica, and a fort was built for better defense against the Spaniards.

As there were many mulberry trees in Georgia, the settlers sent to Europe for silkworms; for the silkworm feeds on the leaf of the mulberry tree. It was hoped that the colony would produce a great quantity of silk. In view of this, and of the unselfish motives of its founders, the seal of the colony bore a group of silkworms, and the motto, *Non sibi, sed aliis* — "Not for themselves, but for others."

Enough silk thread was soon sent to London to make a dress for the queen, who felt proud to wear this first gown of American silk. But the colonists found that they could not make a living from silk, so they tilled the ground, carried on fur trade with the Indians, and cut down timber, which they sold in the West Indies. General Oglethorpe forbade dealing in slaves, but after he gave up the management of the colony, negroes were bought and large plantations of rice and indigo were cultivated.

The Spaniards gave the Georgia settlers a great deal of trouble, but in spite of this the colony prospered, though it grew slowly in numbers. Six years after it was founded, war was declared between England and Spain. "Now," thought Governor Oglethorpe, "the time has come to subdue the Spaniards in America." The people of South Carolina gladly joined him, and in the spring of 1740 an attack was made on St. Augustine. But the Spaniards drove the English back, and they were obliged to return home without having conquered their enemy.

JAMES EDWARD OGLETHORPE
After the painting by Ravenet.

Two years later a Spanish fleet of thirty vessels with five thousand men set out to capture Savannah. Although Oglethorpe had less than one thousand men, his splendid military skill and great courage won the day, and the invaders were glad to retreat to Florida. After that Georgia was never in danger of being attacked by Spaniards.

After many years of usefulness, General Oglethorpe grew tired of active life, and doubtless thought he had earned a rest. He went to reside at his beautiful country home in Essex, England, where

he was often visited by the most noted men of the country. He lived to be nearly ninety years old, and retained to the last his fine figure and bright eyes. Before his death the American colonies had declared themselves free from the mother country, and his little Georgia settlement had become an independent state.

No one of the men who laid the beginnings of the American nation was a wiser or a nobler man than James Oglethorpe. "The gentleness of his nature appeared in all his actions; he was merciful to the prisoner; a father to the emigrant. He loved to relieve the needy and to soothe the mourner."

Such was the founder of Georgia, the last of the thirteen original English colonies.

Things to Remember

Georgia was founded by James Oglethorpe, an Englishman, in 1733.

It was started as a refuge for unfortunate Englishmen imprisoned for debt, and to help protect South Carolina from the Spaniards in Florida.

The Englishmen were soon joined by persecuted Protestants from many countries in Europe.

The colony was named in honor of King George II.

Savannah was the first settlement.

Georgia was the last of the thirteen original English colonies in America.

Map Work. — Locate Savannah. Note its approximate distance from Charleston and St. Augustine.

XVII. KING PHILIP

Born (?) — Died 1676

It is the spot I came to seek—
  My father's ancient burial-place,
Ere from these vales, ashamed and weak,
  Withdrew our wasted race.
It is the spot—I know it well—
Of which our old traditions tell.

* * * * *

This bank, in which the dead were laid,
  Was sacred when its soil was ours;
Hither the silent Indian maid
  Brought wreaths of beads and flowers,
And the gray chief and gifted seer
Worshiped the god of thunders here.

—BRYANT'S "An Indian at the Burial-place of his Fathers."

Do you remember the story of Massasoit, the Indian chief, who was such a good friend of Miles Standish and the Pilgrims in New England? Sad to say, his son, who called himself "King" Philip, waged war on the Englishmen, and caused much bloodshed and great loss of life.

One day while Massasoit was still alive, the Plymouth colonists beheld the old chieftain walking into their settlement with his two sons, Wamsutta and Metacomet. He had come to ask his

paleface friends to give the lads English names. Thereafter these two young Indians were known as Alexander and Philip.

After the death of Massasoit, Alexander, the elder, became chief of the tribe of Wampanoags. The Plymouth settlers did not trust him as they had trusted his father, and at length they suspected that he was plotting to destroy them. So they had him brought to Plymouth, but they were unable to prove the charges against him. On the way home Alexander suddenly fell ill, and a few hours later he died. His young wife declared that the English had poisoned him. Soon other Indians shared her belief and began to talk of revenge.

Philip, who now became chief, took for himself the title of "king." He wore a crown of wampum decorated with shells, and on very important occasions wrapped around his shoulders a bright scarlet blanket. Such was his idea of a king's robe.

The English had always considered Philip a brave, wise, energetic Indian, and a good friend. Now, when he became "king," he renewed his father's treaties, and for two or three years the relations between the whites and redskins were as pleasant as formerly.

But there were many who still believed that the death of Alexander should be avenged. Furthermore, the shrewd savages were beginning to see that the coming of the white men had not made life

easier or better for them. Gradually, and almost without the Indians' noticing it, the palefaces had taken possession of the best land. Only the swamps and less desirable places were left for the redskins. Armed with muskets, the English had hunted so much that the Indians were finding it harder and harder to get game. "In a short time," thought they, "we shall have no hunting ground left, and the English will be glad to have us starve, for then they can take the whole country."

KING PHILIP

At first Philip paid little attention to the discontent felt by his tribe, but after a while the complaints of the white man's trespassing became so frequent that he was forced to listen to them.

Meantime, a great and good Englishman, John Eliot, was making his way through the wilderness, preaching to the savages, and converting many of them to Christianity. The unconverted braves sneeringly called them "praying Indians." Now Eliot's missionary work was stoutly opposed by Philip, who argued that the religion of his old father, Massasoit, was good enough for him and for his people.

By 1670 matters had reached a crisis. The Indians determined to get all the tribes of New England

to join against the white men and drive them from the country. But they found, to their disgust, that the "praying Indians" would not allow a white man to be harmed. They were even willing to sacrifice their own lives for the English. This made Philip more angry than ever.

The Massachusetts colonists happened to hear that Philip and his Wampanoags were turning against them, so they sent for him to come to Plymouth and talk over his grievances. Philip attended this council, but was careful to bring with him a guard of seventy armed warriors. After a long and friendly discussion, however, he signed a paper which guaranteed lasting peace, and the Indians promised to give up firearms, which the English had long before taught them to use.

Although there was no open hostility for some time after this, the whites well knew that the Indians were growing more and more sullen and discontented. By 1675 King Philip had become so bitter toward the colonists that he openly prepared for war. He sent the women and children of his people to the tribe of the Narragansetts for protection, and gave warning to a few of the white settlers to whom he had become attached. Finally he made all his people swear to be forever hostile to the white man. And then began a horrible war that for nearly two years raged in Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island.

On a pleasant summer day in 1675, Philip made an attack on Swansea, a little settlement about thirty miles south of Plymouth. It was Sunday, and the Pilgrims were walking quietly home from church, talking about the danger of Indian attack. Suddenly, from behind rocks and trees, they were fired

KING PHILIP SIGNING THE TREATY OF 1671
After the engraving by F. T. Merrill.

upon by the savages. Several Englishmen fell, killed or wounded.

This was the Indian method of fighting. The red men never came out in the open and made a bold assault, but always hid behind some shelter, until their victim was too near to escape. Then, with a horrible war whoop, they sprang forward like panthers and did their deadly work.

News of the attack at Swansea spread rapidly, and the colonists became thoroughly aroused. Soon the entire frontier was terror-stricken; even the women and boys armed themselves to defend their lives and homes. No white man's cabin was safe, for the Indians would watch from their hiding places to see the men leave the dwelling; then they would rush in, steal the women and children, set fire to the building, and drag their prisoners into the forest.

With about fifteen hundred Indians Philip swept over the country, calling on all the red men to kill the palefaces. Groton, Medfield, Marlborough, and many other English settlements were destroyed, and the few colonists who escaped with their lives fled to the woods in terror. Brookfield and Deerfield were burned, but by a curious circumstance Hadley escaped. Hadley is a little town on the Connecticut River and this is the story as it is still told by the townspeople: —

When the furious savages burst upon this unprotected little hamlet, the people in their fright and confusion seemed unable to make any defense. Suddenly there appeared a strange old man with a long white beard, whom no one had ever seen before. Immediately he took the leadership and gave a military command. The astonished settlers quickly recovered their senses, fell into fighting order, and following their venerable leader drove the enemy from their gates. Then the old man disappeared as

mysteriously as he had come, and the astonished villagers believed that God had sent an angel to their rescue. It was afterward thought that this man was William Goffe, one of the Englishmen who had sentenced King Charles I to death, and who was

GOFFE REPULSING THE INDIANS AT HADLEY
After the engraving by Corbould.

then hiding in America to escape the vengeance of Charles II.

Several tribes of Indians had intrenched themselves for the winter in a fort or palisade, which stood in what is now the town of Kingston, Rhode Island. This section was then little more than a swamp, and the savages had built their barricade of such strong timber that they felt perfectly secure. They preferred to do their fighting when the leaves

were on the trees to afford shelter. Inside the fort were two thousand Indian warriors and many women and children.

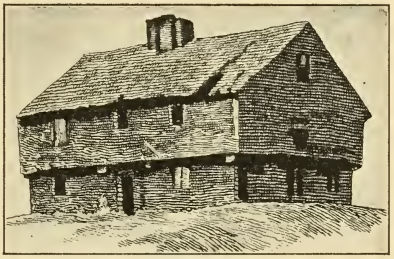
But the savages were soon to learn that they had made a mistake in collecting so many men in one place. As some one has said, they were "cooped up for slaughter." The English had no idea of delaying the war until warm weather. In the middle of the winter about one thousand well-armed colonists under Governor Winslow marched on a terribly stormy day to the fort of the Narragansetts. How they suffered from the stinging cold, the biting wind, and the fatigue of wading for miles through deep snowdrifts! But at last they reached their journey's end.

The Indians were taken entirely by surprise, though they fought desperately. One after another the white men were shot down, until more than two hundred lay dead or dying on the snow-covered marshes. The Indians were killed in even greater numbers, and at last the English set fire to the palisade. Five hundred wigwams were burned to the ground, and with them perished nearly one thousand Indians.

Canonchet, chief of the tribe, made his escape, but later was taken prisoner by the English. One of the leaders of the colonists, himself so badly wounded that he had to be supported, said to Canonchet: "Promise that you will try to make peace

and we will spare your life." But the old chief stoically replied: "I would rather die before my heart becomes soft, and I say anything unworthy of myself. We will fight to the last man rather than become your slaves."

The Indians who had escaped destruction waited until spring before they tried to get their revenge. Then five English settlements in Massachusetts, and two in Rhode Island, were destroyed. But the white people were desperate. They knew they were fighting not only for their own lives, but for the future of the whole white race in America. With heroic effort they struggled to subdue Philip by force of arms. At the same time they made every effort to keep the confidence of the few friendly Indians, hoping through their help to lessen the number of Philip's supporters.



GARRISON HOUSE AT YORK

Built against Indian attacks in 1640–44. It was standing until 1889.

At length Captain Benjamin Church of Plymouth, a famous Indian fighter, led an expedition to hunt for Philip and to destroy him. Church succeeded in capturing the Indian's wife and child, and sent them as slaves to the Bermuda Islands. Philip knew that they were likely to be worked to death

in the hot sun, or cruelly beaten by the slave-driver's whip. The child was a boy nine years old and the last of the race of Massasoit. "My heart is broken," said Philip, "and now I am ready to die!"

In August an Indian deserter guided Captain Church's party at midnight to Philip's camp, near Mount Hope, Rhode Island. The Indians were asleep, but Philip wakened at the sound of the first strange footsteps. He seized his musket and tried to escape, but stumbled, and as he fell he was shot dead by the Indian who had betrayed him. King Philip's head was then cut off and carried on the point of a spear to Plymouth, where it was exposed as a warning to the Indians.

The death of Philip ended the war, for by this time there remained only a few savages of the fighting tribes. The struggle had cost the English more than a thousand lives, and a great deal of money. Twelve of the early towns in Massachusetts had been completely destroyed, and many farms were laid waste.

But, with the perseverance and courage that the New Englanders have always shown, they now went to work with a will to repair the dreadful damage. After a few years the fields again yielded rich harvests; and new buildings, larger and better than the first, took the place of those that the Indians had destroyed.

Things to Remember

A terrible war between the English and the Indians occurred in New England in 1675 and 1676.

It is known in history as King Philip's War, because Philip, chief of the Wampanoags, was the leader.

The Indians feared that the white people were taking so much land that they would soon have none left for hunting grounds.

During the war twelve towns in Massachusetts were utterly destroyed, and more than one thousand white persons were killed.

The English finally won, and King Philip's War ended forever the power of the Indians in New England.

King Philip's "Mark"

XVIII. NATHANIEL BACON

Born 1647 — Died 1676

One song of Liberty and Life
That was and is to be,
Till tyrant flags are trampled rags
And all the world is free!
— STANTON'S "A Song of Liberty."

WHILE King Philip's War was being waged in New England, the English in Virginia were finding it difficult to protect their lives and property from Indian attack.

The men who were chosen to govern the young American colonies did not always understand the needs of the settlers. The experiment of founding a nation in a new world was a difficult one. Many mistakes were made, and the colonists often suffered from unjust laws. For example, the Virginia settlers were forbidden to send tobacco to foreign ports except on English vessels, and they could import goods only from England. In this way the mother country could pay as little as she pleased for tobacco, and charge as much as she liked for the articles of commerce sent to America. The colonists were quite helpless. In addition to this, they were compelled to pay heavy taxes from which they did not receive any benefit.

Now William Berkeley, who was sent as governor to Virginia, first in 1642, and again in 1660, was much disliked by the settlers. He was a brave soldier, a loyal friend of the king, and in many respects a good man; but he was tyrannical, and tried not so much to help the Virginians as to increase his own property and send money back to England. He lived in fine style and has been called a "man of velvet and gold lace." He kept stables full of horses, of which he was extremely proud. The discouraged colonists felt that he cared much more for his horses than for them.

In Governor Berkeley's time the Indians were beginning to cause the Virginians much anxiety. Many fine families in England who had been friends of Charles I, dissatisfied with conditions at home after his death, had come to Virginia; among them were the ancestors of George Washington. These people had lived on great estates, and they preferred to continue a country life in America. It therefore happened that there were few merchants and no large towns in Virginia. The tobacco plantations covered many acres of ground, and the houses of the settlers were long distances apart. When the men were at work in the fields, or were riding over their estates, the women and children were at the mercy of prowling Indians.

At last the scattered settlers were in such urgent need of protection from the savages that they begged

the governor to call out military force, but he paid no attention to their pleading. He well knew how much the colonists disliked him, and he was afraid that an armed body of men might turn against him and his friends. His enemies in the colony said that he was carrying on such a profitable fur trade with the Indians that he did not care to have their ill will.

In addition to all this, Berkeley did not believe in religious toleration, and when Quakers came to Virginia he showed them no mercy. Last of all, he did not believe in free schools and the education of the poor. He even went so far as to say of his colony: "Thank God there are no free schools or printing-presses, and I hope there will be none for a hundred years." He believed that only the children of the rich should be educated.

The Virginia colonists, who now numbered forty thousand, had good reason for finding fault with Governor Berkeley. For the sake of freedom and greater opportunity, they had crossed the seas. Now they found themselves under a governor who practically said: "I will not even try to protect your lives from the Indians; I will not allow religious freedom; and I will not allow you to choose whether your children shall be educated."

Among the Virginia colonists was a wealthy, eloquent young Englishman, with unusual courage and a strong will. He was twenty-eight years old, well

educated, tall, and commanding. His name was Nathaniel Bacon. He and his young wife lived on a large tobacco plantation near the head of the James River, and would have found life very pleasant, had it not been for the hourly fear of Indian attacks.

Almost immediately Bacon became popular with the Virginians, and they soon looked to him as a

WESTOVER MANSION ON THE JAMES RIVER

Its owner, Colonel Byrd, held a command under Bacon during the rebellion.

leader. The Indians were growing bolder and bolder. They would steal from the plantations, and would often kill the men who tried to protect their own or their master's property.

One day in 1675 an Indian murdered an overseer employed on one of Bacon's plantations, and the young man demanded that Governor Berkeley take steps to prevent such an outrage occurring again. As usual, the governor paid no attention to the

request. Bacon decided, therefore, that the time had

BACON CONFRONTING BERKELEY
After the painting by Kelley.

come when the planters would have to take matters into their own hands.

Five hundred men of the neighborhood organized

themselves into a company, and, headed by Bacon, asked permission of the governor to go out to fight their red foes. But Berkeley still refused to pay any attention to the matter, so Bacon waited no longer for a regular commission. He marched against the enemy, set fire to their palisades, and killed one hundred and fifty redskins with the loss of only three of his own men.

He now entered Jamestown, followed by his loyal neighbors, and demanded that the governor give him a commission to continue fighting the savages. Berkeley was furious. He called Bacon's conduct "treason," said that he was "the greatest rebel that ever was in Virginia," and ordered his arrest. But the colonists were true friends of Bacon and insisted that he should be released.

Bacon saw that something further must be done, for the settlers could not continue to submit to the tyranny of such a man as their governor. Knowing that he was backed by the entire colony, Bacon drew up his troops, and at the point of the sword demanded that Berkeley give him a commission. One of the frightened burgesses called out: "Hold your hand, and you may have what you please." Thus was the angry governor forced to make Bacon major general.

The next thing that the people did was to insist upon a new House of Burgesses, or body of lawmakers, and Bacon was elected a member. Through

his influence the severe laws of Jamestown were repealed, and many reforms introduced. These new measures were called "Bacon's Laws."

Not long afterward Nathaniel Bacon heard of a cruel Indian attack only a few miles away, and marched with his men to punish the offenders. As soon as he had gone, the governor attempted to undo all the good that had been done. He called together a body of troops from near-by colonies with the idea of following Bacon and attacking him. But, when the troops found what was expected of them, they refused to move. It is said that the governor fainted from rage and disappointment.

When Bacon heard what the governor had tried to do, he marched straight to Jamestown. Berkeley learned of his coming and fled to one of the ships of the English fleet lying in the harbor.

Jamestown was now entirely in the hands of Bacon, but he was soon obliged to leave it to put down another Indian attack. This battle completely broke the power of the savages, and for a long time afterward they gave the English no trouble. It was fought on ground that is now a part of the city of Richmond. A stream that flows near it is to this day called "Bloody Run," because it is said that on the day of the battle it ran red with the blood of the Indians.

Of course the governor was watching for an op-

portunity to return to Jamestown, and he did so as soon as Bacon had again departed to punish the redskins. Berkeley had little trouble in landing, as most of the fighting men were away with their leader.

When, however, Bacon had subdued the Indians, he drove Berkeley again from Jamestown. Once more was the governor forced to retreat to his vessels, but he did not succeed in subduing the rebellious colonists. Bacon and his friends resolved that Governor Berkeley should never again enter Jamestown, so they promptly burned the town to the ground. It is said that Bacon himself set fire to his home. A heap of ruins is all that is now left of this first English colony in America, which Captain Smith and others had worked so hard to found. A crumbling old church tower, with arched doorway, may be seen by any one sailing up the James River. It is partly hidden from view by the lovely green shrubbery and the ivy and moss that cling to its walls.

It was most unfortunate for Virginia that Nathaniel Bacon died of a fever in 1676, not long after the burning of Jamestown. The months that he had spent in the malarial marshes fighting the Indians had undermined his health, and the hard work, strain, and anxiety had sadly weakened him. He died idolized by the Virginia colonists, who hid his body, fearing that Berkeley would hang it if it

could be found. No stone marks the grave of this daring young leader, and even his burial place is unknown.

Berkeley revenged himself by hanging many of the men who were Bacon's friends. When one of the young man's most loyal supporters was brought

JAMESTOWN IN 1857
After a drawing by Miss C. C. Hopley.

to Berkeley a prisoner, the governor said grimly: "You are welcome. I am glad to see you. You shall be hanged in half an hour." When Charles II heard of this, he was very angry, and exclaimed: "That old fool has taken more lives in his naked country than I have taken for my father's murder." King Charles had condemned to death only six of the fifty-nine men who had voted that his father, Charles I, should be beheaded. The king at once recalled

Berkeley to England, and rebuked him for his cruelty to the American colonists. This was more than the loyal old governor could stand, and it is said that he died of a broken heart.

Although Nathaniel Bacon did not live to see the result of his efforts for better government, the colonists profited by them. They always remembered "Bacon's Laws" and "Bacon's Rebellion," and they never ceased to protest against tyranny. Exactly one hundred years after this uprising against unjust government, all of the American colonies rebelled against the tyrannical laws of the mother country. We shall see, at the proper time, what an active and important part Virginia played in this great movement.

Things to Remember

Nathaniel Bacon of Virginia was one of the first men to attempt to reform England's unjust government of her American colonies.

William Berkeley, governor of Virginia, refused in 1675 to give the colonists military protection against hostile Indians.

Nathaniel Bacon then organized a party of armed men and subdued the savages.

As a member of the House of Burgesses, Bacon urged the passage of laws that would give the colonists greater freedom.

In the struggle known as Bacon's Rebellion Jamestown was destroyed in 1676.

XIX. BENJAMIN FRANKLIN

Born 1706 — Died 1790

God bless our native land!
Firm may she ever stand,
Through storm and night.
When the wild tempests rave,
Ruler of wind and wave,
Do Thou our country save,
By Thy great might.
— BROOKS'S "God Bless Our Native Land."

WE are now coming to the time when the American colonies united to free themselves from the rule of England. As we have already seen, nearly all of the settlements had been started by men who sought freedom from oppression. But the mother country had not yet learned how to rule her children so that they could be happy and contented. She did not realize what they had suffered for the sake of greater independence, and she did not dream how much more they were willing to suffer to preserve that independence.

Among the brave, wise leaders who guided the struggling colonists in their trouble with England was Benjamin Franklin. The story of his life is full of interest. He was born in Boston in 1706, the fifteenth of seventeen children. At the time of

his birth his father and mother were living in a small wooden house on Milk Street, and Benjamin was baptized in the historic Old South Church. They were English people, industrious and respected in the community.

Benjamin early became popular with his playmates, and was looked upon as a leader whom they would cheerfully follow on any adventure. The boys were in the habit of fishing from the edge of a salt marsh that was little better than a mud hole. One day Benjamin's active mind devised a plan for making the marsh a more comfortable fishing ground. Under cover of the darkness he piloted his companions to a great heap of stones that were intended for use in building a house. These stones the boys carried to the water's edge, even though it took three or four boys to carry one stone. It was hard work, but they toiled with a will, and at last they completed a fairly good wharf from which to fish.

Imagine the surprise and anger of the workmen the next morning when they found what had happened! The boys' parents, also, were very indignant, but Benjamin declared that, as a dock was needed, they had done a serviceable piece of work. Benjamin said afterward that his father had then and there taught him a great truth, that "nothing can ever be truly useful, which is not at the same time truly honest."

At eight years of age Benjamin entered a grammar school. He was a bright boy and could not remember the time when he was not able to read. His father had intended to send him to college, and hoped that his son would some day be a clergyman. But the expense of rearing his large family was so great that Mr. Franklin could not afford to keep the boy in school. Consequently, when ten years old, Benjamin was put to work in his father's soap and candle factory, cutting wicks for candles, filling the molds with tallow, and running errands.

Benjamin Franklin

But he was not at all interested in making soap and candles. He had always lived near the water and was fond of sailing boats. This made him think that he would like to spend his life on the sea. He liked also to read, and would pore for hours over the pages of the few books he could obtain.

By the time Benjamin was twelve years of age his father had decided that the boy would not long be contented with work in the candle factory.

What was to be done with him? It was necessary that he should earn his own living, and as he had a great love for books, why should he not be taught printing? If he became interested in printing, his father and mother need no longer worry over the possibility of his running away to become a sailor. Benjamin's older brother James was already carrying on a successful printing business in Boston, and to him Benjamin was now apprenticed, or bound, for nine years.

From the start young Benjamin showed great ability in his new work and soon became extremely useful to his brother. His new acquaintances were glad to lend him books. Often, when he borrowed a volume that had to be returned the next day, he would sit up half of the night to read it. Sometimes he wrote little ballads which he offered for sale on the streets.

When Benjamin was fourteen years of age his brother started a newspaper. By this time the boy had become as good a printer as there was in Boston. He had read the best books that he could find, and had practiced during his leisure moments the writing of prose and poetry. He now began to write articles, which he would slip under the door of his brother's office at night. James had no idea who wrote the articles, but he considered that they were good enough to print. When Benjamin saw his compositions in the newspaper, his joy knew no bounds.

But the two brothers did not get on well together, and Benjamin felt that James treated him harshly. When he was seventeen years of age he resolved to run away from Boston, and make his own way in the world.

He raised a little money by selling a few of his precious books, and one fine autumn day in 1723 he

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, APPRENTICE

After a bronze tablet on the pedestal of the statue by Greenough.

sailed away on a sloop bound for New York. Here he tried to get work as a printer, but finding none started for Philadelphia. He went first by boat from New York to Amboy, New Jersey. While this was but a short distance, the boat was out thirty hours owing to a heavy storm, and during that time the boy had neither food nor drink. As he had very little money, he covered on foot the next fifty miles of his journey through New Jersey. Part of the distance

he walked in a downpour of rain, so that he reached Burlington bedraggled, tired, and hungry. From Burlington he proceeded to Philadelphia by boat.

At length he reached the Quaker city, on a cold Sunday morning, travel-stained, half famished, a stranger in the town, and with only a dollar in his pocket. His first act was to buy three "great puffy rolls." Then he started up Market Street with a roll under each arm, eating the third.

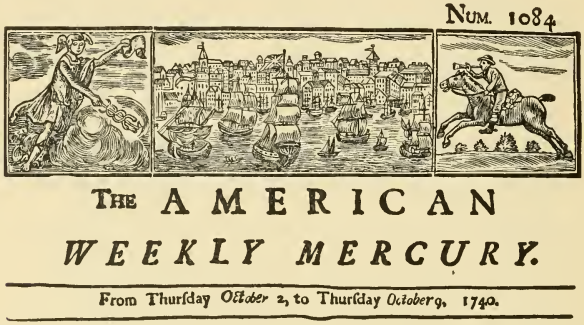
Wandering along in this way, he passed the house of a Mr. Read, whose daughter, Deborah, stood in the door looking with amusement at the lad's appearance. He was dressed in buckskin knee breeches, and the pockets of his long coat bulged with his extra shirts and stockings. Curiously enough, this fair girl, who laughed at the ridiculous appearance of the tired boy, was the one whom Franklin afterward married.

A kind Quaker aided the young Boston printer to get work. His employers found that he had a man's judgment and sound sense, as well as unusual ability in his trade, and they helped him forward as fast as possible.

He soon attracted the notice of the governor of Pennsylvania, Sir William Keith, who encouraged him to go to London, buy a press and type, and set up in business for himself in Philadelphia. Keith promised the young man that he would write letters to people in London who would help him. Franklin

did not know that the English governor was more ready to make promises than to keep them, so with a light heart he set off for England. But, when he reached London, he found that the letters that he had counted upon for help had never been sent.

The American youth had very little money, but he had what was far better, a brave spirit and a



Reduced Facsimile of the Heading of an Early Issue of the First Newspaper in Philadelphia

determination to succeed under all circumstances. He soon found work in a London printing office, and immediately began to save money and to study during his spare hours. In less than two years he was back in Philadelphia to start a press of his own. Soon afterward he began to publish a newspaper, the *Pennsylvania Gazette.*

At the age of twenty-six he married Miss Deborah Read. At first their home was very simple. Long years afterward, when Franklin had dined with kings and queens and the greatest men and

women of England and France, when his name was known all over Europe and people were proud to speak with him, he wrote the story of his life. In this book he says of his early married years: "Our breakfast was for a long time bread and milk (no tea) and I ate it out of a twopenny earthen porringer, with a pewter spoon." Nor was he too proud to carry paper to his shop in a wheelbarrow.

One of the first things that made Franklin famous was his "Almanac." In those days, next to the Bible, the Almanac was the book most read in American households. Franklin thought he could help a large number of persons by publishing useful information, not generally known, and by giving good advice. So he started "Poor Richard's Almanac," which was gratefully received and carefully read in hundreds of homes here and in England. These are some of the wise proverbs of "Poor Richard": —

"*Lost time is never found again.*"

"*Beware of little expenses; a small leak will sink a great ship.*"

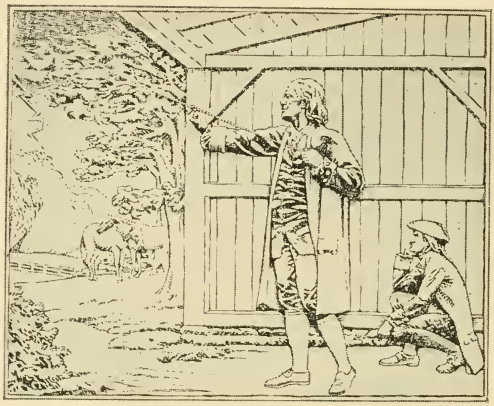
"*Rather go to bed supperless than rise in debt.*"

"*A word to the wise is enough.*"

In the course of years Benjamin Franklin became not only a very prosperous man, but a man looked up to by all the people of Philadelphia as one of their ablest citizens. He took deep interest in all

public affairs. He founded the first library in Philadelphia, which was really the beginning of our present library system. And he laid the foundation for a high school which grew into a college and is now the great University of Pennsylvania.

All the time that he was carrying on his newspaper work he did much good, made hosts of



FRANKLIN AND THE LIGHTNING

After a bronze tablet on the pedestal of the statue by Greenough.

friends, and found opportunity for study. He learned several languages, and spent hours in reading books on science, and in making experiments. His first important invention was the Franklin stove. Up to that time open fireplaces had been the only method of heating.

When Franklin was forty-six years old he made one of the greatest scientific discoveries of the eighteenth century. By a simple experiment with

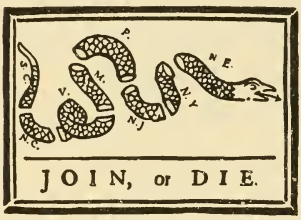
a kite in 1752 he showed that lightning is electricity. His kite was covered with a silk handkerchief, and to the stick was attached a pointed wire. The string was of hemp and at the end which he held was placed an iron key. One day, during a thunderstorm, he and his son took the kite to the fields. Soon Franklin discovered that electricity was coming down the string, for the little fibers of thread stood out stiffly; and when he placed his knuckles near the key he felt a shock. This led to his invention of the lightning rod, now in common use.

From this time on Franklin's name was known all over America and Europe. In 1753 the king appointed him postmaster-general of all the American colonies, and, as we shall see, he did some of his most important work after he had passed his fiftieth year.

About this time the English colonists began to see that there was likely to be war with the French, who had come down from Canada and were taking possession of much of the territory that the English claimed. Something had to be done, and accordingly, in 1754, representatives from the different colonies met in a congress held at Albany, New York.

Franklin's newspaper immediately came out with the motto, "Join or Die," and, when he went to Albany as the representative of Pennsylvania, he carried with him a plan to unite all the colonies

under one government. But the young settlers were not yet ready for this union, for they had not begun to think of themselves as Americans. It was customary for a man to speak of himself as a New Yorker, or a Virginian, as the case might be, but he was quite certain not to call himself an American. The colonists, therefore, did not see the wisdom of Franklin's scheme and rejected it. However, twenty years later it was regarded as the only means of preserving in the New World the freedom which the colonists had sought in their flight from the mother country. Franklin's "Albany Plan" was in the end a stepping-stone to the founding of the American nation.



DEVICE PRINTED IN FRANKLIN'S "PENNSYLVANIA GAZETTE," 1754

Franklin's life is so interwoven with important events in American history that there is not room here to tell them all. Two years after the congress met at Albany he was sent to England to present to the king a protest from the Pennsylvanians; for the descendants of William Penn were not managing the colony in a way that satisfied the settlers. He was successful in obtaining the rights which the Pennsylvanians asked for, and for more than five years matters of great importance to the American colonists kept Franklin in England. His discover-

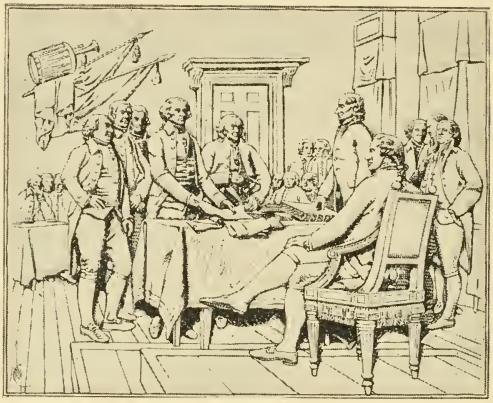
ies in electricity had made people eager to meet him, and he was everywhere received with enthusiasm.

Later, when England threatened to tax the American colonies for more than they considered just and right, Franklin was again sent to London to present the American side of the case to King George III. This monarch is said to have warned his court that Franklin was more than a match for them all. With untiring patience and wise foresight, Franklin tried to show the king that his tax was "the mother of mischief." If George III had listened to the counsel of Benjamin Franklin, the destructive war between England and America might have been avoided.

Franklin reached London in 1764 and remained there for eleven years. Throughout that time he was nobly engaged in assisting his countrymen in various ways. At length, when he found that it was no longer possible to avoid war, he returned home. But before his arrival the first blood had been shed.

Franklin now gave his best efforts to helping his fellow-sufferers in their brave resistance to oppression. The very day after he reached home he was chosen a member of the celebrated Continental Congress, which met at Philadelphia in 1774. Of this we shall learn more in later chapters, when we study the lives of other famous men. Franklin was also one of the men who were chosen to draw up the great Declaration of Independence in 1776.

In rebelling against England, and in declaring that they would rather fight than submit to unjust laws and taxation, the Americans had set for themselves a difficult task Here was a handful of poor colonies going to war with the powerful English



FRANKLIN AND THE COMMITTEE PRESENTING THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE TO THE PRESIDENT OF CONGRESS

After a bronze tablet on the pedestal of the statue by Greenough.

nation. Money and arms were needed, and Franklin was chosen as the one man among all the Americans who could obtain the necessary aid. He was sent to France to secure her assistance.

The French people received him with every honor, and during his stay in Paris the wisest statesmen, as well as persons of wealth and fashion, treated him with great respect. Even shopkeepers would rush to their doors to get a glimpse of "the great Doctor Franklin."

He was most successful in the mission he had undertaken. The French government in 1778 signed a treaty which recognized the American colonies as a nation, the United States, and France agreed to furnish arms, ammunition, and money to help this new nation fight England.

When the long war was over, and representatives from England and America met in Paris in 1783 to sign a treaty of peace, Franklin's sound judgment was eagerly sought. Later, when he learned that he had been chosen special ambassador to France, he said: "I am old and good for nothing, but, as the storekeepers say of their remnants of cloth, 'I am but a fag end, and you may have me for what you please.'"

In 1789 the people of each state sent a number of their ablest men to Philadelphia to make laws for the nation just born. Benjamin Franklin was among the number who framed the Constitution of the United States, under which we now live.

He was seventy-eight years old when he returned from his last European sojourn, and his name was venerated in England and France as well as in America. Everybody spoke of him as one of the greatest Americans, one of the founders of the American republic, and its most distinguished scientist and diplomat.

After a long, busy, useful life, Benjamin Franklin died in Philadelphia in 1790, at the age of eighty-

four. Twenty thousand persons attended his funeral. He was laid to rest beside his wife and daughter in the burying ground of Christ's Church. The plain marble stone bears the simple words, "Benjamin and Deborah Franklin."

Things to Remember

Benjamin Franklin was the first American to make important discoveries in science.

He was also famous as a diplomat, a statesman, and a writer.

He was the first to propose a union of the thirteen American colonies under one government.

In 1764 he was sent to the court of King George III to urge just taxation of the colonies.

Through his influence aid was procured from France in 1778 to help the colonists free themselves from England.

He was one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence and one of the men who framed the Constitution of the United States.

Map Work. — Trace Franklin's first journey from Boston to Philadelphia.

XX. LOUIS MONTCALM

Born 1712 — Died 1759

Yea, happy they who serve our France,
And neither pain nor danger fly;
But in the front of war's advance
Still deem it but a glorious chance,
To be among the brave who die.
— DEROULEDE'S "Good Fighting."

In the government gardens of the beautiful city of Quebec there stands a tall monument to two heroes, a Frenchman and an Englishman. Both were brave, noble men, and each died trying to secure Canada for his own nation.

The older of the two was Louis Montcalm. He was born in a pleasant old château in France, was carefully educated, and at an early age entered the army. When thirty years old he became colonel of a regiment, fought for his country in Italy and Germany, and won great distinction. He loved books and the quiet of country life, but he loved France better; and his high sense of duty and honor kept him throughout his life a soldier. How did it happen that he found a soldier's grave in America?

We have learned that the brave La Salle had tried to build a chain of forts from Canada to the Gulf of Mexico, along the Great Lakes and the

Mississippi River. We know that, as the years went by after his death, his countrymen gradually erected outposts, and claimed all the land in the Mississippi valley for the French.

Now the English, who had established colonies along the Atlantic seaboard and the Gulf of Mexico, were creeping farther and farther west. "Something must be done," said they, "to stop the French from building forts. They are blocking our passage across the Alleghany Mountains."

Louis Montcalm

Accordingly, in 1750, a company was organized in Virginia known as the Ohio Company, to explore and settle the lands on the east bank of the Ohio River. As a first step they sent a party of surveyors to measure and mark out the territory.

When the French heard of this, they immediately began to build another fort on the Alleghany River. This river unites with the Monongahela to form the Ohio, and the French considered the junction of the two rivers one of the most important gateways to the Great West.

As soon as Governor Dinwiddie of Virginia

learned what the French were doing, he decided that the time had come to settle the matter once for all. "We will order them to stop work," said he. A young surveyor was chosen to be the bearer of this important order. It was George Washington, then only a little more than twenty years of age.

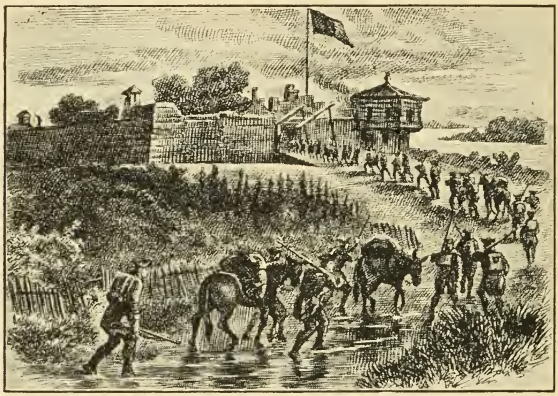
Washington found a difficult and dangerous journey before him. The country was full of hostile Indians; there were no roads or bridges, and deep snow covered the trails. But he was always fearless in the discharge of his duty, and he boldly set out with six companions and an Indian guide.

WASHINGTON AS A YOUNG MAN

In the uniform of a Virginia colonel. After the painting by Peale.

At last, after many exciting adventures and hardships, the journey was completed in safety, and the messenger was kindly received by the French. But, naturally enough, they refused to stop building their fort. "You may tell Governor Dinwiddie," said the French commander, "that France owns this country, and we intend to go on with our work."

There was now nothing left for the English to do but to build forts of their own faster than the French, and in this way to take possession of the country. A body of men was sent to begin work on a spot which Washington had selected, the site of the present city of Pittsburg. But the French, who were in that country in far larger numbers than the



Fort Duquesne

English had supposed, drove the latter away, and finished the stronghold for themselves. This they named Fort Duquesne, in honor of the Canadian governor.

The French, however, did not win this victory without bloodshed. Washington, as leader of the party, made an attack at a place called Great Meadows, and many of the French were killed and others carried away prisoners.

In great haste Washington now began to build a

shelter, which he called Fort Necessity; for he well knew that the French would next attack him. He fought bravely with his little body of men, but he could not long withstand the superior force of the enemy, and he was obliged to surrender.

The English were now thoroughly aroused and determined to drive out the French and to force a passage through the Alleghanies to the land farther west. It must be remembered that the English claimed the entire country as far west as the Pacific Ocean. For had not Sir Francis Drake sailed along the coast of California, planted the English flag, and taken possession of that whole western territory in the name of the English ruler?

British Soldier

Accordingly, General Braddock, an old, experienced soldier, was sent over to America in the summer of 1755 to lead the colonists in their fight against the French. With him came red-coated regiments of the regular army. "Now," thought the delighted colonists, "we shall soon see the Frenchmen fleeing to Canada."

There was no disputing the fact that General

Braddock knew a very great deal about fighting in the regular way, against armies in the open field; but it is equally certain that he knew nothing whatever about fighting in a forest against the Indians who were helping the French. The Five Nations still cherished their hatred of the French, and took revenge by siding with the English. This last conflict between the French and English in America is known as the French and Indian War.

French Soldier

Young George Washington, who was one of Braddock's aides, gave the English general some sound advice about the best method of fighting Indians, and warned him to proceed quietly and with caution. But Braddock replied that, while the Indians were no doubt more than a match for the colonists, they certainly could make no impression upon the king's regulars. It was, therefore, with flying banners and loud music that General Braddock marched his soldiers toward the French posts.

Alas, when too late, Braddock found that the young Virginia major was right. Out of deep

ravines, and from behind trees, shrubs, and thickets, the Indians attacked his regiments, and the bewildered English soldiers, so willing to fight, could not even see the enemy. For three long, terrible hours the French and Indians kept up their fire. At the end of that time hundreds of Englishmen lay dead, and the rest were fleeing for their lives.

All of Braddock's officers except Washington were killed or wounded. Washington had two horses shot under him, and four balls passed through his coat, but happily he was to be saved for greater undertakings. At last General Braddock received a mortal wound, and at midnight, by the light of the torch, Washington read the burial service over the grave of the commander. Then the young major sadly led the defeated English redcoats back over the mountains to Virginia.

It was now high time for France to show some interest in her struggling Canadian colonies, and in 1756 a body of French troops was sent to America. With them, in command of the French army, sailed the brave, daring Louis Montcalm. Fresh from the scene of battle had he come, for at home, also, England and France were fighting each other, and each was determined to conquer in America as well as in Europe.

Montcalm's first victory, at Oswego, New York, was a brilliant one, and a hard blow to the English; for it gave the French control of Lake Ontario.

His next move caused the enemy still greater alarm. In the summer, with eight thousand French and

Braddock surprised by an Ambuscade

Indians, Montcalm crossed Lake George and captured Fort William Henry, which the English, under the wise leadership of Sir William Johnson, had

built at the head of the lake to guard the northern waters of the Hudson River.

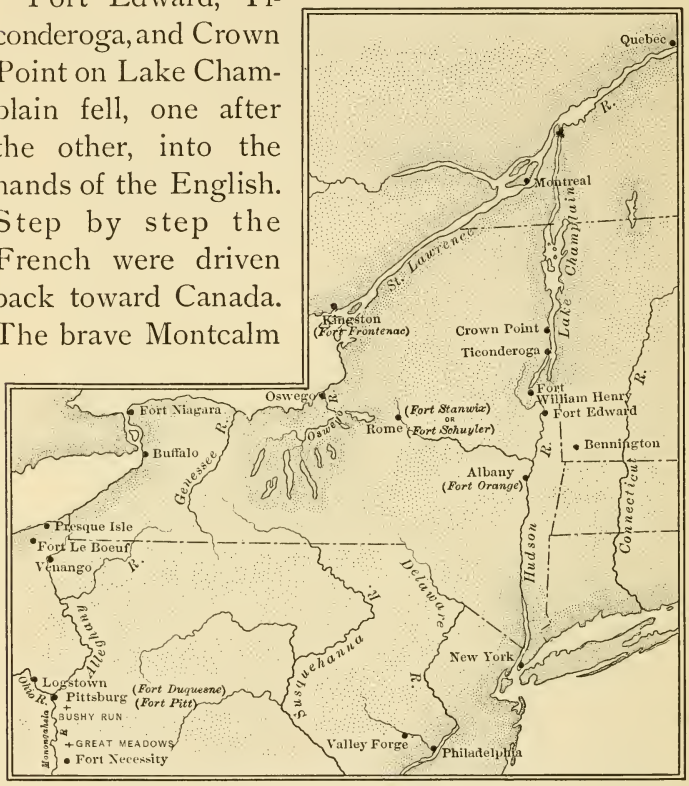
The dreadful massacre that followed this victory showed how little the Indians could be trusted when once their thirst for blood was kindled. The English had surrendered the fort to the French, who, though holding them as prisoners, had promised to protect their lives. This did not satisfy the savages. In spite of all that Montcalm could do to prevent it, even to the risking of his own life, the redskins fell upon the defenceless English and murdered a large number of men, women, and children.

But now came England's turn to win, and Fort Niagara, the strong, important post between Lake Erie and Lake Ontario, fell into her hands. "Now," said the victorious English, "we have one of the keys that unlock the passage to the rich fur trade of the West. We have only to capture Fort Duquesne and the control of the Mississippi valley is in our hands."

First, however, the English resolved to attack Fort Ticonderoga, where Champlain had won his victory over the Iroquois one hundred and fifty years before. An army of fifteen thousand English and colonial troops was sent to capture the fort. Montcalm had only four thousand men to defend it, but he secured a commanding position on a neck of land, with clumps of trees for protection. The battle lasted from noon until night, when the Eng-

lish were obliged to abandon the attack. This was the last great victory won by the French in America.

Fort Edward, Ticonderoga, and Crown Point on Lake Champlain fell, one after the other, into the hands of the English. Step by step the French were driven back toward Canada. The brave Montcalm



MAP SHOWING FRENCH AND ENGLISH FORTS

was fighting under terrible difficulty. The French government was so taken up with its wars at home that the struggling colonies in Canada were left to take care of themselves as best they could.

In the summer of 1758, the English captured Louisburg, "the Gibraltar of America." This was one of the Frenchmen's strongest forts, and one of the most important; for it stood on Cape Breton Island at the entrance to the Gulf of St. Lawrence. It covered a large plot of ground, and its thick walls were over thirty feet high. Once in possession of this, the English controlled the St. Lawrence River, and could prevent the French in Canada from receiving help by this waterway.

In November Fort Duquesne also fell into the hands of the English. This was renamed Fort Pitt, in honor of William Pitt, a great English statesman of whom we shall soon learn. Later the French lost Fort Frontenac on Lake Ontario.

All through the year 1759 the fighting continued. The great, decisive battle came on the morning of the 13th of September, when the English captured Quebec. For weeks Montcalm had known that the English were planning to attack this stronghold, and with every means in his power he strengthened his defenses. He was expecting the attack to come from the English ships below in the river. In the next chapter, however, we shall learn how the English commander, General Wolfe, with several thousand men climbed the steep heights that led to the town and joined battle with the French on a level spot known as the Plains of Abraham.

Words cannot describe the astonishment of the

French when at daybreak they saw the English soldiers lined up for battle. Was it possible that these were the men whom Montcalm had believed to be on the ships in the river, or encamped along the shore, far below!

The situation was indeed a desperate one for the French, but Louis Montcalm never flinched in times of danger. "This is serious business," he said calmly, and immediately gave his orders. Officers spurred their horses forward, now in one direction, now in another, and among the troops there was the greatest activity. By ten o'clock Montcalm had rallied his forces, and amid shouting and firing the French army rushed upon their foe. Silently the English waited until the enemy were near; then the redcoats pushed forward with such terrific force that the French were obliged to fall back.

Montcalm, mounted on his spirited horse, galloped back and forth among his distracted troops, trying in vain to spur them to fresh attack. But they had given up all hope of victory and were running for their lives.

As Montcalm was swept along by the wild rush, a bullet entered his body and fatally wounded him. Tenderly supporting their gallant commander, the soldiers led his horse back to the town he had so bravely tried to save for France. A little group of frightened women stood huddled together near the city gate. "Look," cried one of them, "the

Marquis is killed!" But, with heroic effort, Montcalm replied: "It is nothing; do not trouble for me, good friends." The next morning he died. When told that the end was near, he said: "It is better so. I am happy that I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec."

Quebec in the Eighteenth Century

His dying thought was for the men of his army. His last words to one of his generals were: "The humanity of the English sets my mind at peace concerning the fate of the French prisoners and the Canadians. Feel towards them as they have caused me to feel. Do not let them perceive that they have changed masters. Be their protector as I have been their father."

The confusion and distress in Quebec were so

great that no coffin could be found for the dead commander, and an old servant of the Ursuline convent made one as best he could out of a few rough boards. In this rude box Montcalm was that night laid to rest under the floor of the convent. There were no cannon to fire a volley over the grave of the brave soldier, but the army that had loved and trusted him, and the enemy that had defeated him, respected his memory and honored his name.

"The funeral of Montcalm was the funeral of New France." Not long after the fall of Quebec the whole of Canada was surrendered to the English. Not French, but English, was to be the language spoken on the vast continent of America.

Things to Remember

The last great struggle between the French and English in America is known as the French and Indian War.

In 1755 England sent out an army under General Braddock to help her colonists. Braddock was killed, and his army defeated by the French.

General Montcalm, a brave French soldier, was sent with a body of French troops, in 1756, to command the army against the English.

Quebec, the main stronghold of the French, was captured by the English in 1759. In this battle Montcalm was killed.

After the fall of Quebec, the Canadian possessions in America fell into the hands of the English.

Map Work. — Locate on an outline map the line of French forts from Louisburg to Duquesne. Locate the English forts, Oswego, William Henry, and Edward.

XXI. JAMES WOLFE

Born 1726 — Died 1759

"Now tell us what 'twas all about,"
Young Peterkin he cries;
And little Wilhelmine looks up
With wonder-waiting eyes;
"Now tell us all about the war,
And what they fought each other for."

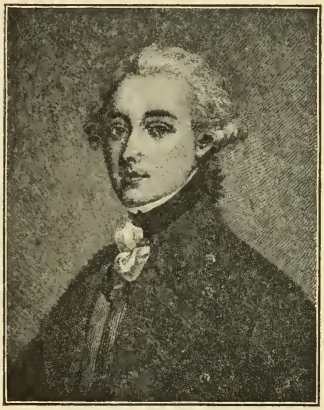
"It was the English," Kaspar said,
"Who put the French to rout;
But what they fought each other for
I could not well make out.
But everybody said," quoth he,
"That 'twas a famous victory."

— SOUTHEY'S "After Blenheim."

THE French and Indian War in America was only a small part of the great struggle between France and England. At the same time the bitter conflict known as the Seven Years' War was raging in Europe. At length England's interests, both at home and abroad, were intrusted to William Pitt.

"I am sure I can save this country," said Pitt, when he took charge of affairs, and time proved that this was no idle boast. It was the energy and daring of this great man that ended the wearisome years of fighting between France and England. It

was the power and eloquence of William Pitt that aroused England to hold all the land she had in America, and to get as much more as possible. "We must continue to send ships, soldiers, arms, and ammunition to protect our colonies in America," urged the great statesman, over and over again.



James Wolfe

Among the officers who were sent on this mission was young James Wolfe. His father had served with distinction in the English army, and his mother was a sweet, gentle lady, to whom Wolfe was always devoted. When grown to manhood, he once wrote her from a distant country, where he was gallantly fighting for England: "The greatest happiness that I wish for is to see you happy."

Even in boyhood Wolfe showed evidence of marked military ability, and was allowed to serve as adjutant of a regiment at the age of sixteen. In spite of frail health he rose rapidly to the post of major general, and was only thirty-two years old when he came to America. He was tall, slender, with reddish hair and bright, fearless eyes. He had the faculty of winning the loyal devotion of his sol-

diers. There was no danger that they would not willingly face at the suggestion of their beloved leader.

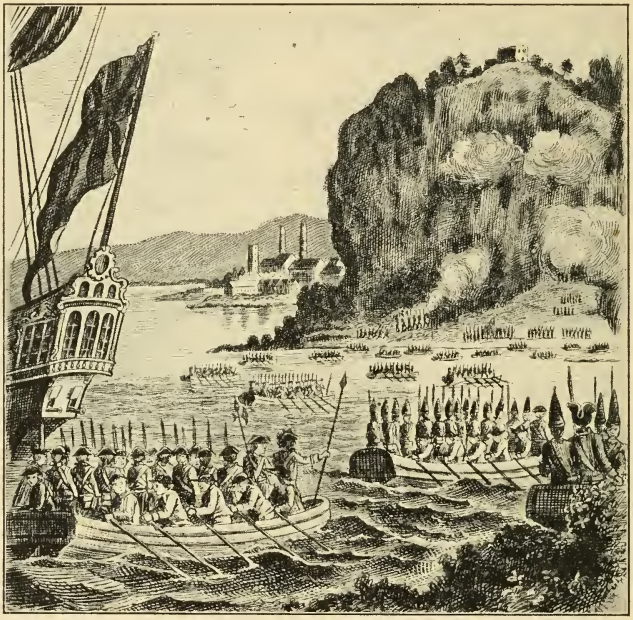
As for himself, he was absolutely without fear. He wrote to his mother, "My utmost desire and ambition is to look steadily upon danger;" and to his uncle, "If I have health and constitution enough for the campaign, I shall think myself a lucky man; what happens afterwards is of no great consequence."

In the capture of the stronghold of Louisburg, Wolfe had assisted General Amherst and had shown great courage and skill. When the report of his brilliant conduct reached Pitt, it was decided that Wolfe should be placed in command of an expedition against Quebec. Many of the older officers opposed the idea of conferring such honor upon a young man of thirty-three, and some one told George II that Pitt's new general out in America was mad. The old king is said to have retorted: "Mad, is he? Then I hope he will bite some others of my generals."

No one knew better than young General Wolfe the difficulties and dangers of the undertaking that had been assigned him. A great responsibility rested upon his shoulders. Could he capture Quebec? If so, the war would probably be ended.

He at once ordered his ships to sail out of the harbor of Louisburg and up the St. Lawrence nearly as far as Quebec. Then he encamped his soldiers on the opposite bank and waited for reinforcements.

Before him, on a hill more than three hundred feet above the river, lay the most strongly fortified city on the American continent. All along its walls guns were placed for defense, and Wolfe felt that it would



The Siege of Quebec

be almost impossible for him to force an entrance. He knew also that Montcalm was collecting a large army to oppose him.

One day he made a happy discovery. With the aid of a powerful field glass he saw a steep, narrow path winding along the side of the cliff to the heights,

about two miles from Quebec. If only his men could get up this rocky pathway!

After thinking the matter over carefully, Wolfe decided to make the hazardous attempt. The long hours of one whole day and night he spent in careful preparation. Finally all was ready. At one o'clock on the morning of September 13, 1759, his soldiers stepped quietly into small boats, and silently rowed to the landing-place selected by their commander.

Like many another brave warrior, Wolfe loved peace and quiet and many things that his busy life of fighting left him little time to enjoy. He liked nothing better than to spend an hour with books, and especially books of poetry.

As he was borne along the stream, in the still autumn night, the general's thoughts were naturally of serious matters. "The coming day," thought he, "will probably decide whether Canada shall belong to England or to her rival, France. Before another dawn, hundreds of men will have sacrificed their lives for their country." He is said to have repeated Gray's beautiful poem, "An Elegy Written in a Country Churchyard," and to have dwelt particularly on the following lines:

"The boast of heraldry, the pomp of power,
And all that beauty, all that wealth e'er gave,
Await alike the inevitable hour,
The paths of glory lead but to the grave."

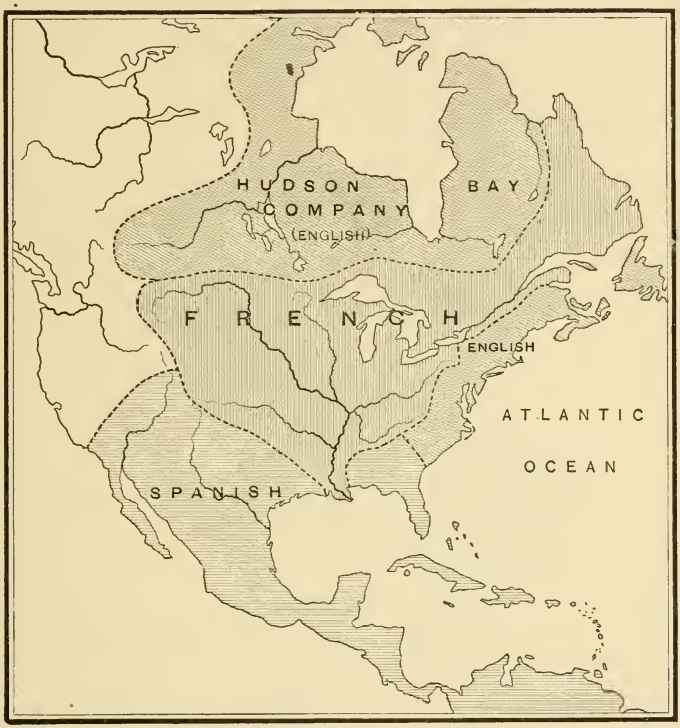
With as much calmness as if he were beginning a pleasant journey instead of facing a desperate battle, Wolfe remarked: "I would rather have been the author of that poem than take Quebec."

Before dawn the English redcoats made their landing, and, guns in hand, stealthily climbed the steep, rocky wall on the north shore of the river that led to the Plains of Abraham. It was a long hard climb, up an almost perpendicular cliff, with only here and there a bush or tree to hold to. But by sunrise the entire army had completed the ascent.

Suddenly the sharp challenge of a French sentry rang through the air. One or two questions were asked, to which reply was given by an English officer who spoke perfect French. It was still dark. The sentry was on the lookout for French boats bringing provisions, and thought that the English were his own countrymen. He therefore allowed them to proceed, and Wolfe's men charged upon the tents sheltering soldiers whom Montcalm had stationed to watch this very path. They had failed to do their duty, and now those who were not caught by the English fled in terror.

We have already learned how surprised was the French army when, in the early morning light, they saw the red uniforms of the British soldiers and the glitter of their muskets. We know that the brave Montcalm did not falter, but that his troops were soon forced to fall back in confusion.

Wolfe now shouted to his men to press to the front, while from hundreds of throats came the British cheer. He was still leading the charge, and

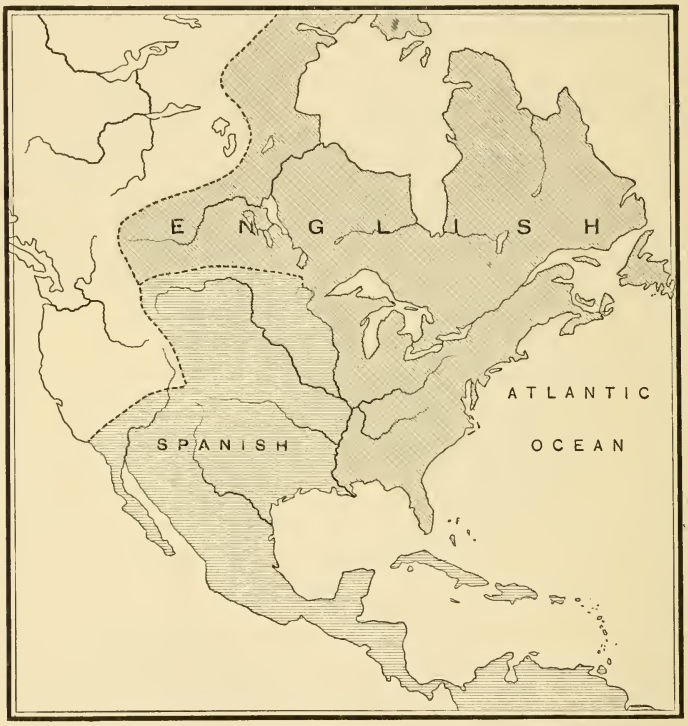


Before the French and Indian War

cheering his men on in the victorious attack, when three bullet wounds brought him to the ground. As he was tenderly supported by his officers, he heard shouts of "They run! They run!" "Who run?" quickly asked the dying general. "The

enemy, sir," was the reply. "Now God be praised," said General Wolfe, "I shall die in peace."

With sincere affection and grief, his comrades placed his body on a ship, which bore it to Eng-



After the French and Indian War

land. A monument to Wolfe's memory now stands in that grand old church, Westminster Abbey.

Great was the joy in England when word was received that the French possessions in America had

passed into English hands. Thousands of bonfires all over the country were kindled in celebration. "In one spot alone all was dark and silent. A widowed mother mourned for a loving and devoted son, and the people forbore to profane her grief with the clamor of their rejoicings."

Naturally enough, the rejoicing among the colonists in America was greater even than that in England. With the fall of Quebec, French power in America was broken, and the English became masters of the greater portion of the continent. France surrendered all the land she had claimed *east* of the Mississippi, together with the whole of Canada. The English came into possession of Florida also; for, in the Seven Years' War, England had taken from Spain Cuba and the Philippine Islands, and later exchanged them for Florida.

If you look on the map at the strip of land lying between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains, you will see the portion of the country that England could not claim. Before the war ended France had given this territory, together with the town of New Orleans, to Spain in payment for her aid.

Now that the American colonists had nothing further to fear from the French, all things seemed possible, and an idea of the future greatness of America began to fill their minds. A Boston clergyman said: "With the continued blessing of

heaven the colonies will become, in another century or two, a mighty empire."

The colonies had learned a great lesson; they had found how much could be accomplished by joining forces against a common enemy; they saw the wisdom of Benjamin Franklin's motto, "Join or Die."

With Wolfe's triumph on the Plains of Abraham, the history of the separate colonies in America draws to an end, and the history of the United States begins.

Things to Remember

William Pitt was a great English statesman who helped the American colonists defeat the French.

In 1759 Pitt chose James Wolfe, a brave young English officer, to lead the attack on Quebec, the most important stronghold of the French.

Wolfe led the English and colonial troops to victory, but lost his life in the battle on the Plains of Abraham.

After the fall of Quebec, France surrendered all of Canada to England, together with the whole country between the Mississippi River and the Alleghany Mountains.

France had already given to Spain the country between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains.

Spain gave Florida to England in exchange for Cuba and the Philippine Islands.

XXII. PATRICK HENRY

Born 1736 — Died 1799

Freedom ! sweet Freedom ! our voices resound,
Queen by God's blessing, unsceptered, uncrowned !
Freedom, sweet Freedom, our pulses repeat,
Warm with her life-blood, as long as they beat !
— HOLMES'S "Freedom, our Queen."

HAD you chanced to walk many years ago in the streets of a certain little Virginia town, you might have met a tall man, carelessly dressed, with a slouching gait and an air of indifference. Such was the general appearance of Patrick Henry. But if you had seen this same man an hour later in the court room, you would have scarcely believed your eyes. In the heat of an exciting debate Patrick Henry's lank form would straighten; his calm face become intense; his eyes flash fire; while the magic of his words held his hearers spellbound. After his first important speech, a listener said: "He made our blood run cold and our hair stand on end." Such was the power of this great orator who helped to bring about the founding of the American nation. Let us see how it happened.

When Patrick Henry was a young man, the United States as a nation did not exist. There was no central government — no President, no United States Congress. The street bands did not play the "Star-Spangled Banner," for there was no American flag. Instead, the people listened to "God save the King," for the colonists in America looked

STAMPS USED IN 1765

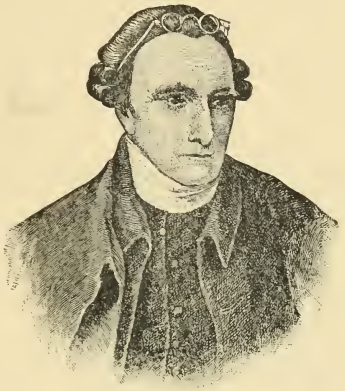
upon England as their mother country, and regarded her king as their ruler.

In the year 1765 a bill called the Stamp Act was passed by the English Parliament. Parliament makes England's laws just as Congress at Washington makes our own. By this act the colonists were obliged to put a stamp, from a half-penny to ten pounds in value, on paper used for newspapers, or for legal purposes, such as wills, deeds, and notes.

In this way King George III proposed to raise money to keep a small English army in America, for he felt that such a body of troops was needed

to defend the settlers. "It is, therefore, only fair," said the king, "that the colonists should support this army."

Now in America it was believed that people should not be taxed except by their own representatives. For hundreds of years their forefathers in England had stood for this great principle. Each colony had its legislature, elected by the people, and if it chose to levy a tax, well and good. But since the colonists were allowed no voice in the English government, it seemed to them very unjust that Parliament should decide the taxes that they must pay. Prominent men, such as Benjamin Franklin, were sent to England to protest that "taxation without representation" was tyranny. From Maine to Georgia people were aroused over the Stamp Act. Furthermore, the colonists did not want British soldiers in America. They said that they were able to protect themselves, now that the trouble with the French was ended.



PATRICK HENRY

The king did not pay any attention to the protest of the colonists. The leaders among the Ameri-

cans, therefore, urged their friends and neighbors to refuse to pay the tax, and Patrick Henry was one of the foremost of these leaders.

Besides being one of America's greatest orators, Henry was an able lawyer, a wise statesman, and a true-hearted, lovable man. He was born at Studley, Virginia. His father was a well-educated Scotchman, and his mother an English woman with ready wit and a great fondness for music.

When Patrick was taken from the village school, at the age of ten, his father and uncle became his teachers. He studied mathematics, Latin, and Greek, and when fifteen years old was apprenticed to a country shopkeeper. A year later his father started Patrick and a brother not much older in business for themselves.

Would you think it strange if boys of that age did not succeed? As might have been expected, the venture failed, but Patrick did not lose heart. He kept up his interest in study, and read many of his books over and over again. He liked best geography and history. He loved out-of-door pastimes, hunting, fishing, and roaming through woods and fields. His friends thought him an idle, dreamy youth, jovial and fond of frolic; but no one foresaw that he was destined to play an important part in American history.

When eighteen Patrick Henry married, and after a few years spent in trying to make a living at farm-

ing, and again at store keeping, he decided to study law. At last he had found the right work. After a few months of study, he was admitted to the bar, and his fine mind, good judgment, and remarkable gift of speech soon won him fame and fortune.

His first celebrated case was known as the "Parson's Cause." Its object was to secure larger salaries for clergymen. Nothing like Henry's eloquence in arguing this case ever had been heard in the colony. A few moments after he began to speak his listeners were leaning forward in breathless silence. The young lawyer's father was so amazed and delighted by his mastery of words that "tears of ecstasy streamed down his cheeks." When the trial came to a close, the people bore Patrick Henry on their shoulders out of the courthouse, and carried him around the yard in triumph.

KING GEORGE III
After the painting by Zoffani.

But Henry's name was to become known far beyond the borders of Virginia. In 1765 he was elected to the House of Burgesses. On his twenty-ninth birthday, only a few days after taking his seat in the House, a debate arose over the stamp tax. Henry sprang to his feet, and in a

ringing oration declared that no power outside the colony itself had any right to impose a tax on its people. He offered a series of resolutions condemning the Stamp Act as dangerous to liberty. Thomas Jefferson, then a young man, was present. Long years afterward he said: "That speech of Patrick Henry's excelled anything I have ever heard."

That was a lively day in the House of Burgesses. Among the members were many Tories, that is, persons so loyal to the king that they believed America should submit to whatever he thought best. You can imagine the excitement when young Patrick Henry, ending his great address, exclaimed: "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third"—he was stopped by cries from the king's friends of "Treason! Treason!" But the orator was not to be frightened. When the cries ceased, he finished with great earnestness—"and George the Third may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it."

In the audience were many persons who thought that Patrick Henry would surely be hanged for his bold words against the king. But to commit an act of treason was far from Henry's intention. Simple justice was all that he demanded of George III. He little dreamed that he had made a speech that would stir all the colonies and live in history.

His resolutions passed the House in the face of great opposition, and were soon printed and scattered

PATRICK HENRY ADDRESSING THE VIRGINIA ASSEMBLY
After the painting by A. Chappel.

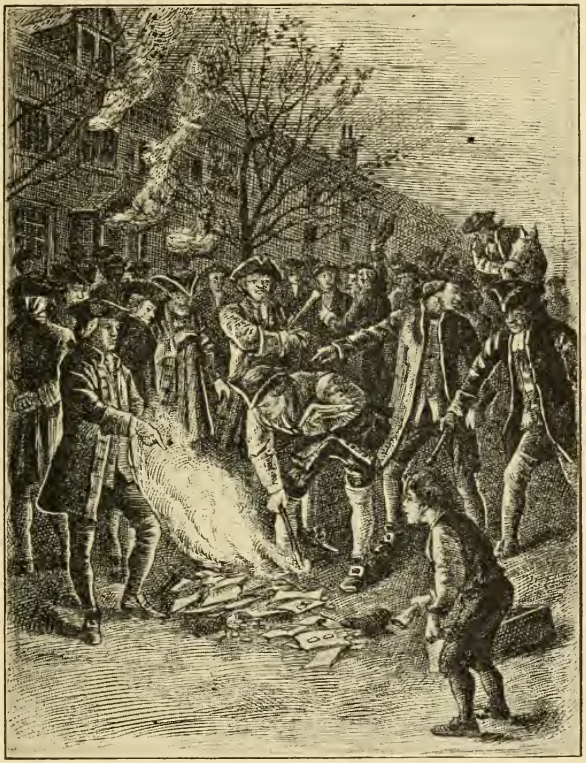
broadcast through the colonies. They helped to strengthen the other colonies in their determination to resist the stamp tax.

When the heated session was over, Henry started quietly for home. "He passed down the street," said a neighbor, "wearing buckskin breeches, his saddlebags on his arm, leading a lean horse, and chatting with a friend who walked at his side."

George III was slow to learn that the people have rights as well as the king. He would have done well to give heed to the discontent of the colonists and to the counsel of wise English statesmen. Many members of Parliament, among them William Pitt, sympathized with the Americans, and were glad when they refused to pay the stamp tax. "I rejoice," said Pitt in a great speech in the House of Commons, "that America has resisted."

If this had been the first unjust measure imposed by England upon her colonies, they might have regarded it with less concern. We have already learned how they had to confine their trade in tobacco, rice, and other American products to English ports, to use only English ships, and to buy nothing made in any factory or mill except an English one. They were not allowed to make for themselves so much as a horseshoe nail, or to print even a copy of the New Testament. We know, also, that some of the governors who were sent out from England, men like Berkeley, for example, were more

concerned with making fortunes for themselves and for the king, than in advancing the interests of the settlers in America.



PATRIOTS BURNING STAMPED PAPER

So the colonists everywhere agreed that they would not pay the hated stamp tax, and to show they were in earnest, they burned boxes of stamped paper as soon as they were taken from the ships.

When King George found that the colonists would not pay this tax, he tried a new method of getting money from them. Another act was passed, providing that they should pay a tax on all tea, glass, paper, and paint which they bought in England. This only aroused anew the anger of the colonists, who declared: "We will do without all these things rather than pay duty on them."

In the next chapter we shall learn more about this tax and what came of it. Boston resented it so bitterly that the king thought he would punish that town by closing the port, so that no vessel might enter or leave the harbor. Upon hearing this, all the colonies determined to help Boston in her trouble. Some of the wisest and best men of each colony were chosen in 1774 to meet in Philadelphia at what is known in history as the First Continental Congress. They met to talk over the alarming situation and to agree upon some plan of action.

Patrick Henry and George Washington were among the delegates sent from Virginia. These were the days before railroads and steamboats, and Henry made the journey from Virginia to Philadelphia on horseback, stopping over night at Mount Vernon. In the morning he and Washington set out together for the Congress.

In the convention Patrick Henry's words made a deep impression. He urged the delegates to forget that they were from the colonies of Pennsylvania,

New York, or Massachusetts, and to remember that hereafter they must all unite in a common cause. For himself he declared, "I am not a Virginian, but an American." John Adams afterward said: "No one in the Congress except Patrick Henry appeared to understand the precipice upon which

WASHINGTON, HENRY, AND PENDLETON GOING TO THE FIRST CONGRESS

we stood, and had candor and courage enough to acknowledge it." Not long after the close of the Continental Congress, a convention was held in Virginia. Matters had gone from bad to worse, and the trouble with King George was daily growing more serious.

The convention met in St. John's Church, Richmond. This old building is now visited every year by thousands of persons eager to see the place

where Patrick Henry made his wonderful speech. On that memorable day it was crowded to the doors. The greatest excitement prevailed. But when the clear voice of the orator rang out a deathlike silence fell upon all. Straightening himself to his full height, with commanding and graceful gestures, and the passion for freedom flashing from his eyes, the speaker said:

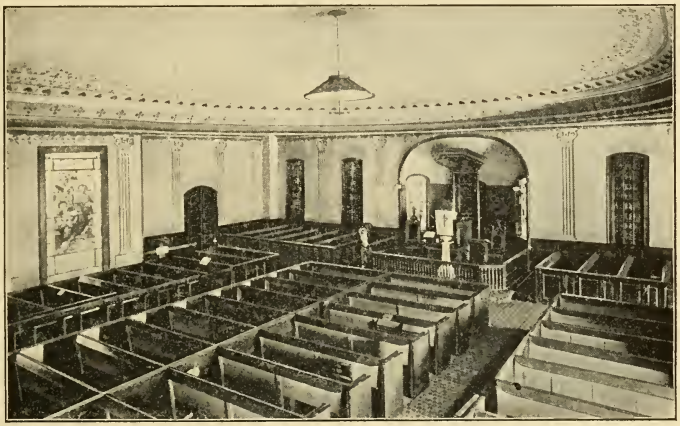
"There is no longer any room for hope of peace. If we wish to be free, we must fight! An appeal to arms and to the God of hosts is all that is left us. We shall not fight our battles alone. There is a just God who presides over the destinies of nations, and who will raise up friends to fight our battles for us. Is life so dear or peace so sweet as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery? Forgive it, Almighty God! I know not what course others may take, but as for me, give me liberty or give me death."

In this famous address, parts of which are to-day known to every schoolboy, Patrick Henry had the courage to utter words which most of his countrymen felt, but did not dare express.

As we continue our story we shall see that war did come, with all its horror and bloodshed, and we shall learn what were the results of that great conflict.

Throughout the rest of his life Patrick Henry was a brave, loyal, and useful citizen. Just before war was declared, the royal governor of Virginia, Lord Dunmore, took all the colony's gunpowder

from the public storehouse and placed it on board an English vessel. The people could stand such injustice no longer, and Patrick Henry led the first armed resistance to English rule in Virginia. He organized a volunteer force and compelled the governor to pay the colony for the gunpowder.



ST. JOHN'S CHURCH, RICHMOND

In this church the Virginia Convention met in 1775.

Henry was a delegate to the Second Continental Congress, and he was the first commander of the Virginia Revolutionary army. When the war cloud burst and the royal governor was obliged to withdraw, Henry was made the first governor of Virginia. To this post Patrick Henry was twice reëlected, but he declined many national offices — secretary of state under President Washington, chief justice of the United States, and an ambassadorship to France.

The last years of the great orator's life were spent on his large plantation, Red Hill, surrounded by his children and grandchildren; and he loved nothing better than to play and romp with little children.

Patrick Henry suffered from poor health for many years, but he was always ready to do whatever he could for his state and country. He was beloved by every one for his sweetness of character, sympathy for the oppressed, and willingness to help all who were in trouble. "He was a good fighter," said one in speaking of him, "but never a good hater." People sometimes wronged him because they were jealous of his fame and power, but his heart was too kind to harbor bitterness even toward these.

The terrible war between England and her American colonies is known as the Revolution. Wherever its story is told, the name of Patrick Henry will live. Americans will never forget the man who dared to rise in that famous Virginia convention and declare that he would rather die than live without liberty. By this and similar speeches he helped to inspire the colonists to stand firm for freedom, and to win it.

Things to Remember

In 1765 the English Parliament passed the Stamp Act, which laid a tax on paper used by the American colonists for legal and other purposes.

The Americans believed that Parliament had no right to tax them, because America had no representatives in Parliament.

Patrick Henry, a native of Virginia, was one of the greatest American orators. His eloquence convinced the colonists that they would no longer be free men if they submitted to unjust taxation.

Henry became one of the leaders of the colonists. He was among the first to insist that they must fight for freedom, rather than submit to the tyranny of King George III.

Henry was the first governor of the state of Virginia.

Map Work. — Locate Williamsburg and Richmond.

Memory Selection. — Patrick Henry, "War Inevitable."

THE COLONIES IN 1776: SOUTHERN SECTION

XXIII. SAMUEL ADAMS

Born 1722 — Died 1803

Swift as their summons came they left
The plow mid-furrow standing still,
The half-ground corn grist in the mill,
The spade in earth, the ax in cleft.

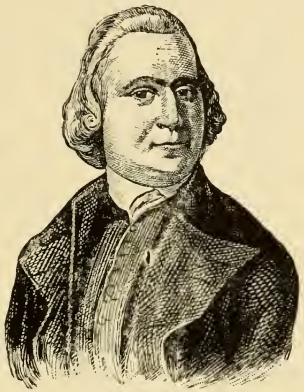
They went where duty seemed to call,
They scarcely asked the reason why;
They only knew they could but die,
And death was not the worst of all.

— WHITTIER'S "Lexington."

"THIS is a glorious morning for America," said Samuel Adams when he heard the first guns fired at Lexington. He knew that his countrymen had at last begun the fight for independence. Samuel Adams was a quiet, peace-loving man, who hated the horrors of war, but he also hated injustice and oppression. "Unless King George's tyranny is checked," said he, "it will increase until we are little more than slaves."

Adams was among the very first to declare that England had no right to tax the American colonies. At a town meeting held in Faneuil Hall, Boston, a building which has been called the "Cradle of Liberty," he spoke out almost as boldly as had Patrick Henry in Virginia. "I denounce the act as un-

just," said he, "and I urge you not to submit to it." Benjamin Franklin, who at this time was in England, advised the king and Parliament not to attempt to enforce the tax. "I warn you," said Franklin, "that my countrymen will never submit." But, as he afterward remarked, "I might as well have tried to stop the sun setting."



SAMUEL ADAMS
After the portrait by Copley.

The colonists were no more willing to pay the tax on tea, glass, and paint than they had been to pay the stamp tax. "Let us all agree," said Samuel Adams, "to eat and drink and wear nothing which England sends here to sell, so long as the king demands this money from us." Throughout the colonies thousands of persons refused to use anything of British manufacture. Wives and daughters, no matter how wealthy, wore fabrics which they themselves spun and wove, while men banded together to resist the tax. They called themselves the "Sons of Liberty."

Month by month the feeling against King George grew more bitter. On the day when the new tax went into effect business was suspended, bells were tolled, and flags raised at half-mast. Urged by

Adams, the Massachusetts Assembly sent to the other colonies a letter asking them to resist the English agents who tried to collect the money.

But England seemed bent on doing everything in her power to annoy the Americans. She sent troops to New York and to Boston, with orders that they should be supported at the public expense. "In this way," said the king, "I will punish these obstinate people."

Two regiments landed at Long Wharf, Boston, and marched to the common, where they paraded with much pomp. The citizens were very indignant, and, as might have been expected, trouble came before long. Workmen and idlers constantly passing the places where the troops were quartered, managed to bring on disputes and quarrels, and as time wore on people of all classes became more and more angry at the presence of the soldiers. But the royal governor felt himself much safer with English soldiers in the town, and would not withdraw them.

One day in March, 1770, after the soldiers had been quartered in Boston about a year and a half, a mob of excited people attacked a body of troops with stones, sticks, and pieces of ice, and dared the "lobster backs" to fire. The red-coated British soldiers accepted the challenge. They discharged their muskets into the crowd, and several persons were killed or wounded.

On the morning following this massacre the people of Boston rose in their might. With one voice they declared that England had no right to send armed troops into a peaceful city, and they demanded

THE BOSTON MASSACRE — THE FIRST BLOOD SHED IN THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION

After the engraving by Paul Revere.

that these hated regiments be removed from the town. After much discussion Governor Hutchinson agreed to send one regiment away.

But this did not satisfy the colonists. A committee of fifteen men, led by Samuel Adams, called

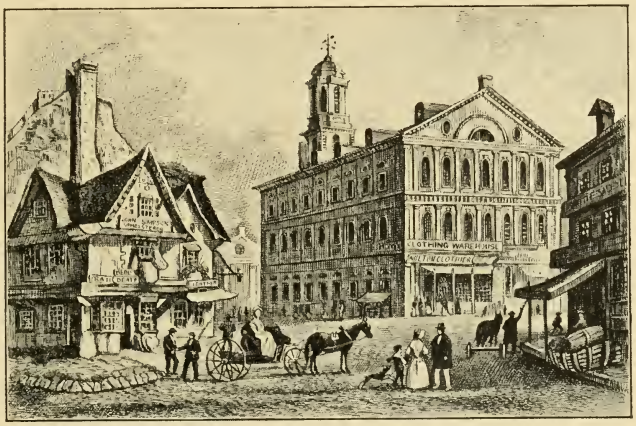
a town meeting in the Old South Meeting House, as Faneuil Hall was too small to hold all those who were eager to attend. The people of Boston held Adams in great respect, and when he earnestly insisted that "both regiments or none" should be removed, the crowd took up the cry. "Both regiments or none! Both regiments or none!" shouted thousands of voices in the building and in the streets At length the governor was forced to yield, and promised to send all the soldiers to an island in the harbor. These troops were always jokingly called "the Sam Adams regiments."

Let us now look a little more closely at Samuel Adams himself. He had a fine face, clear, steel-blue eyes, was of medium height, and possessed pleasing manners. He was born in a fine old mansion in Boston, and was educated in the local schools and at Harvard. His father, who was a man of influence in the town, had at one time been wealthy, but had lost his money in an unfortunate banking venture. Forced to enter business again, he became the owner of a malt house, with Samuel for his partner, and after the father's death the young man carried on the business. He was nicknamed "Sammy the malster."

Samuel Adams was nearly thirty years old before he began to take an active interest in public affairs. He had passed his fortieth year before his career as a great statesman began. At this age his hair

turned gray, and he began to suffer from a peculiar nervous trembling of the head and hands.

Notwithstanding this outward appearance of age, a youthful fire burned in his heart. In his fortieth year he gave up all personal business, and until he was over eighty devoted his life to his country.



FANEUIL HALL—"THE CRADLE OF LIBERTY"

When not attending public meetings or to the duties of his offices, he was busy writing until long past midnight. Seeing a bright light in his window when they were ready for bed, his neighbors would say, "Sam Adams is still at work writing against the Tories." Brave Mrs. Adams shared her husband's patriotism. While he gave his time to the cause of American independence, she cheerfully toiled with her needle to obtain food for the children.

Of the long struggle between America and Eng-

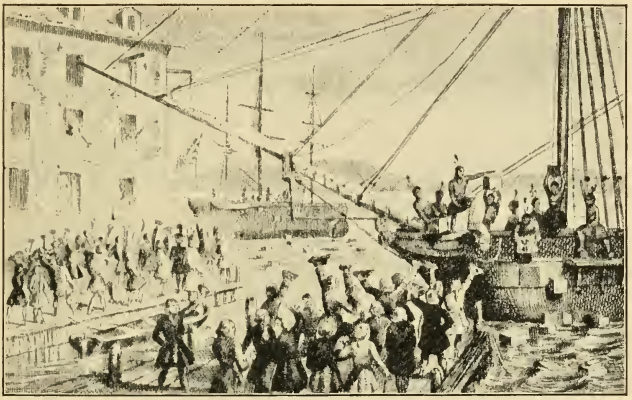
land before war was finally declared, it has been said that in the North: "Boston led the thirteen colonies, and Sam Adams led Boston." It is certainly doubtful whether the courage of the colonists would have held out if Samuel Adams had not worked night and day, always cheerfully, always hopefully, urging his countrymen to stand firm for liberty.

To return to the exciting events in Boston; nothing after the withdrawal of the troops so aroused the public as the "Boston Tea Party." In those days the men and women of Massachusetts were quite as fond of good tea as they are now; but you remember that tea was one of the articles England had taxed, and the colonists had pledged themselves to do without it. Accordingly, when a vessel bearing chests of tea came up to a Boston wharf, the inhabitants declared that it should not be unloaded. Notices were posted, inviting the citizens to meet under the Liberty Tree, to take such action as would compel the shippers to carry their goods back across the water. At this moment news arrived that three more tea ships were on the way.

"This tea," said Adams, "is more to be dreaded than plague or pestilence." Another meeting was called, and seven thousand people filled the Old South Meeting House and overflowed into the street. They sent for one of the shippers and put to him the question: "Will you take your tea back to England?" His reply was: "The governor will

not permit me to do so at present." "Then," said Samuel Adams, "this meeting can do nothing more to save the country."

It had been previously arranged that this remark of Adams should be a signal for action. Men rose from their seats, and followed a few disguised as



THE BOSTON TEA PARTY
From an old print.

Indians to Griffin's Wharf, where in the pale moonlight the tea ship rode at anchor. "If the tea cannot go back to England, it shall not be landed," cried the crowd. Leaping aboard the vessel, the men in Indian dress hurled three hundred and forty-two chests of tea into the harbor. For many a long month afterward Boston housewives steeped catnip and pennyroyal, and with patriotic zeal tried to enjoy this new drink.

The news of the Boston Tea Party quickly spread over the country. Horsemen galloped in every direction to tell the story, and throughout the colonies there was great rejoicing. The citizens of Massachusetts now formed a Provincial Congress and chose John Hancock as president.

In the same year, 1774, the First Continental Congress met in Philadelphia, and here, too, Samuel Adams became an imposing and powerful figure. He appeared in a new suit of clothes, new wig, new silk stockings and shoes — all provided by admiring friends. None of the ardent Americans who met in that famous Congress in the Quaker City worked harder for the union of the colonies against their oppressor than did stout-hearted Samuel Adams.

"I should advise persisting in our struggle for liberty," said he, "though it were revealed from heaven that nine hundred and ninety-nine were to perish, and only one of a thousand to survive and retain his liberty. One such free man must possess more virtue and enjoy more happiness than a thousand slaves."

While this Congress was in session Massachusetts enrolled an army of twelve thousand soldiers in order that she might be prepared if England should resort to arms. They were called "minutemen," for they held themselves ready to fight at a moment's notice.

Before the convening of the Second Continental

Congress in Philadelphia in 1775, an event of tremendous importance happened in America. The British had fired the first shot in the war of the Revolution, the war that was to free America from English rule.

General Gage, the British military commander, had sent regiments out beyond Boston. He had

Paul Revere's Ride

heard that the "Yankees" had stored a quantity of ammunition at Concord, and he resolved to seize it. So on the night of April 18, 1775, eight hundred British troops set out for Concord. They had orders to stop at Lexington and arrest John Hancock and Samuel Adams, for it was known that they were in Lexington that night, ready to start the next day for the Congress at Philadelphia. The king knew just how important a part these men were playing in

American resistance, and he ordered General Gage to send them to England to be tried for treason.

Now the Americans had been quietly watching the British and knew exactly what they were intending to do. It had been agreed that as soon as the English troops started toward Concord, a lantern would be hung in the belfry of the Old North Church in Boston. As soon as this signal flashed, horsemen dashed out of the town to spread the news that the English were coming. William Dawes sped through Roxbury and Watertown, and Paul Revere rode through the towns north and west of Boston.

As Revere spurred his tired steed into Lexington, the watchman who guarded the house in which Adams and Hancock were sleeping met the daring horseman with the caution, "The family does not wish to be disturbed by any noise." "Noise!" shouted the excited Paul Revere. "Why, man, the English are coming!"

He was none too soon. Clearly the sound of marching infantry was heard on the still night air. In haste Captain Parker assembled his minutemen on the village green. "Stand your ground," was his command. "Don't fire unless fired upon. But if they mean to have a war, let it begin here."

It was almost daybreak when the redcoats, under Major Pitcairn, marched into the village and saw the Americans drawn up on the common. "Dis-

perse, ye villains!" shouted Pitcairn. The colonists did not move. "Fire!" he commanded, and seven American patriots fell dead. The British had been the first to fire.

Adams and Hancock were by this time making their way in safety across the meadows toward

THE BATTLE AT LEXINGTON, APRIL 19, 1775
After the engraving by Anthony Doolittle.

Woburn, and forty-eight hours later they were on the road to Philadelphia.

After their deadly work at Lexington the British soldiers marched on, destroying whatever military stores they could find. But when the call "To arms!" came, with the tragic news of Lexington, the minutemen proved their faithfulness. Leaving plows in furrows, they rushed home for shotguns, powderhorns, and bullets which had been made

from pewter spoons and dishes melted by their wives. Jumping on their horses, in many instances without stopping to put on coats, they rode from far and near toward the scene of action. Across the bridge at Concord gathered these patriot farmers, calm and resolute, ready to give their lives for the cause of liberty, and there they met the redcoats in the first battle of the Revolution, in which several men on both sides were killed.

"By the rude bridge that
arched the flood,
Their flag to April's
breeze unfurled,
Here once the embattled
farmers stood
And fired the shot heard
round the world."

STATUE OF THE MINUTEMAN AT CONCORD

The British started to march back to Boston, but the farmers were now thoroughly aroused. They fired from behind trees, fences, and buildings, and nearly three hundred redcoats had fallen before the Charlestown quarters were reached.

On the 17th of June of this memorable year the

famous battle of Bunker Hill was fought. Bunker Hill and Breed's Hill were heights of Charlestown, with a commanding view of Boston. General Gage thought that he would seize and hold the heights for the British.

When the Americans heard of this, fifteen hundred men under Colonel Prescott advanced up Breed's Hill after dark, and spent the whole night in building an embankment for protection. Imagine the astonishment of Gage when the sun rose, and he saw Colonel Prescott in command of the summit. The English general bit his lip in disappointment. "Is he a fighter?" he asked some one who stood near. "He will fight as long as there is a drop of blood left in his body," was the reply.

The heat of the day was intense, but an army of three thousand British troops, under General Howe, started at noon to climb the hill. As they neared the top, they were met with a terrific fire from the American guns. Exhausted, the English fell back, but they soon rallied and made a second attack, only to be driven back a second time with fearful loss.

"Will the British give it up?" "Can our men hold out?" These were the questions burning on the lips of thousands who, from the roofs and steeples of Boston, watched the terrible battle.

"Over heaps all torn and gory — shall I tell the fearful story,
How they surged above the breastwork, as a sea breaks o'er a deck;

How, driven, yet scarce defeated, our worn-out men retreated,
With their powderhorns all emptied, like the swimmers from a wreck?"

By the time the English had rallied for their third assault, the Americans were firing their last rounds of ammunition. In any event the colonists who had toiled all night with shovels could not have gone on fighting for many more hours against fresh arrivals of British troops. Colonel Prescott saw that the moment had come to order a retreat, but their resistance had been so remarkable that the battle could scarcely be called a victory for the enemy. England's trained military men were astounded to find how well the American farmers could fight.

The brave stand of these Massachusetts men strengthened all the colonies in their determination to take up arms for liberty. They now gave up hope of bringing King George to reason by peaceful means, and felt that there was only one thing left — to fight for freedom.

To the close of his long life Samuel Adams gave his time and strength to his country. King George had failed to capture him and thus force him to stop urging his countrymen forward. The king now tried bribery. He sent General Gage to offer Adams valuable gifts and a powerful position if he would desert the colonies and come over to England's side.

Can you not imagine the anger of Samuel Adams

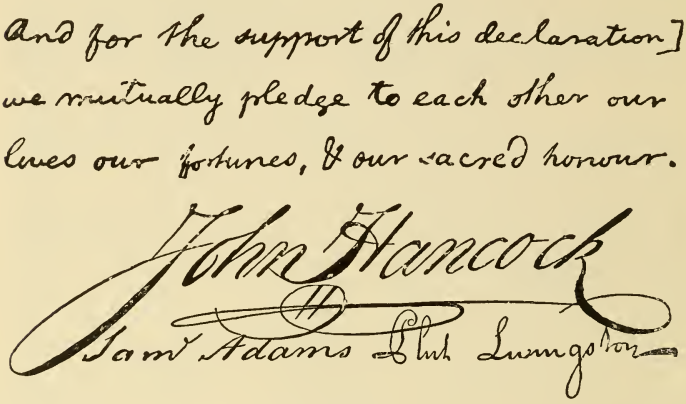
when this message was received? Gage knew better than to deliver it in person, so he sent a messenger. The indignation of the patriot knew no bounds. "Tell Governor Gage," he angrily

THE BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL, JUNE 17, 1775
Boston Battery. Charlestown. British troops attacking.
From a contemporary print.

replied, "that it is the advice of Samuel Adams to him that he no longer insult the feelings of an exasperated people. No personal consideration shall ever induce me to abandon the righteous cause of my country."

Besides being a member of the Massachusetts Senate, Adams served in Congress for eight years,

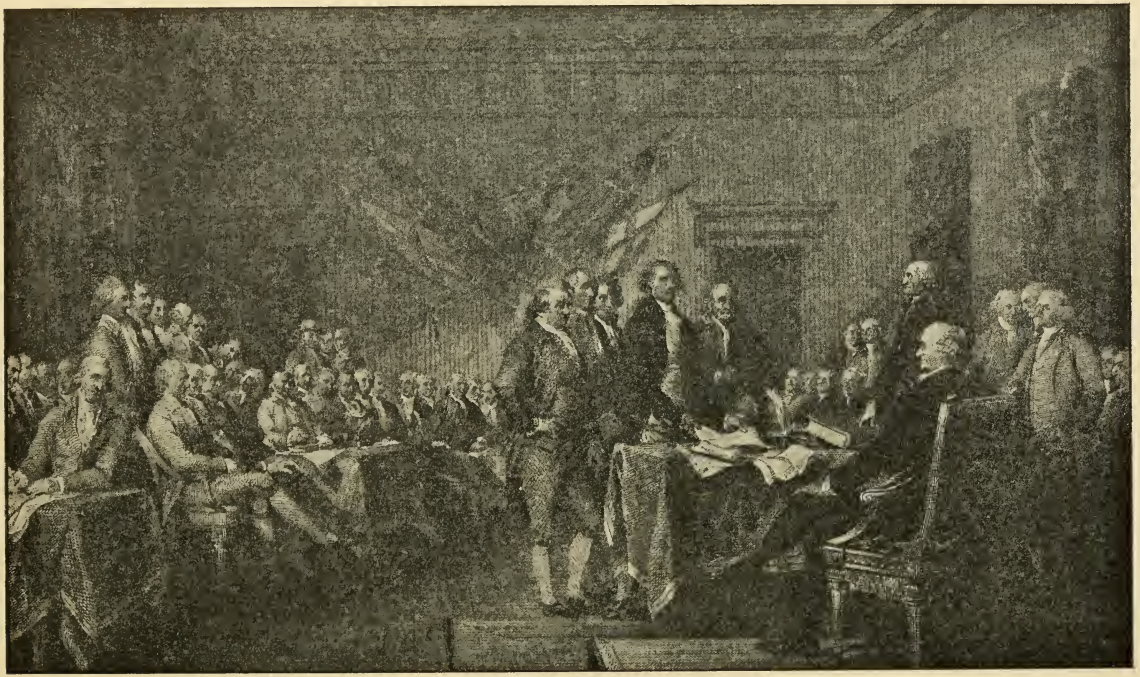
and was three times elected governor of his state. He was one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, the famous document drawn up by Congress in 1776, which stated that "The United Colonies are, and by right ought to be, free and


And for the support of this declaration]
we mutually pledge to each other our
lives our fortunes, & our sacred honour.
John Hancock
Sam Adams Lyn Lumgston

FACSIMILE OF THE LAST LINES OF THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE
In the writing of Jefferson, with the first three signatures.

independent states." When Adams signed this paper, it was perhaps the proudest moment of his life. By his side sat his friend, John Hancock, who dashed down his name in huge letters, "In order," said he, "that George the Third may read it without spectacles." "Now," said some other signer, "we must all hang together." "Yes," quickly replied Ben Franklin with ready wit, "or we shall all hang separately."

When Samuel Adams died he was buried in the



SIGNING THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

After the painting by Trumbull.

old Granary burying ground in Boston. Every one mourned his loss. His simple ways and threadbare clothes had endeared him to the poor, who regarded him as their friend and were not afraid to come to him at all times for help. The wealthy and educated appreciated him still more, for they knew the sacrifices he had made, and what his busy brain and willing pen had done to help the cause for which they were all fighting.

Things to Remember

Samuel Adams of Massachusetts was one of the leaders of the American Revolution, which was caused by the tyranny of King George III.

He was one of the first to declare that England had no right to tax her colonies in America unjustly.

He led the famous town meetings in Faneuil Hall, Boston, which has been called the "Cradle of Liberty."

The colonists refused to pay England's tax on tea, and in Boston in 1773 the townspeople threw chests of tea into the harbor.

King George thought he could compel the Americans to submit, so he sent soldiers to Boston and New York.

The first shot in the War of the Revolution was fired by the British at Lexington, Massachusetts, on April 19, 1775, and the same day the first battle was fought at Concord.

The battle of Bunker Hill was fought on June 17, 1775.

The Declaration of Independence was signed at Philadelphia on July 4, 1776. From this time the Americans declared themselves to be, not English subjects, but free and independent American citizens.

Samuel Adams was governor of Massachusetts, a member of the

First and Second Continental Congresses, and one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence.

Map Work. — Locate Boston, Lexington, Concord, Charlestown.

Memory Selections. — Longfellow, "Paul Revere's Ride"; Emerson, "Concord Hymn"; Pierpont, "Warren's Address."

THE COLONIES IN 1776: NORTHERN SECTION

XXIV. GEORGE WASHINGTON

Born 1732 — Died 1799

Pale is the February sky,
And brief the midday's sunny hours;
The wind-swept forest seems to sigh
For the sweet time of leaves and flowers.

Yet has no month a prouder day,
Not even when the summer broods
O'er meadows in their fresh array,
Or autumn tints the glowing woods.

For this chill season now again
Brings, in its annual round, the morn
When, greatest of the sons of men,
Our glorious Washington was born.
— BRYANT'S "The Twenty-second of February."

EVERY boy and girl is familiar with the portrait of Washington, for it hangs upon the walls of schoolhouses throughout the land. But do you know anything about his boyhood? Did you ever try to picture him in his home in Virginia, playing with his younger brothers and sisters; or riding over his father's plantation by the side of his older half-brothers?

George Washington was born at Bridges Creek, Virginia. His childhood was passed near Freder-

icksburg, on a fine estate to which his parents moved when he was very young. Here Washington's father, a man of excellent education, and his beautiful mother reared their large family. Lawrence, the oldest child, was sent to England to be educated, for the family was of good English ancestry, and the Washingtons in America still loved their old home.

BIRTHPLACE OF WASHINGTON

The site of the house is now marked by a monument.

There were no good country schools near Fredericksburg in those early days. George Washington learned to "read, write, and cipher" in an "old field schoolhouse," where the parish sexton was teacher.

WASHINGTON COAT OF ARMS

Before the boy was eleven years old his father died, and after that his mother had to fill the place of both parents. She tried to teach George self-control, for he had a high temper, and to implant in him a love of honor and justice. After a time she sent him to live with his brother Augustine at Bridges Creek, that he might go to a better school.

It is clear that at the age of thirteen Washington regarded his school work very seriously. He learned to draw up documents and keep accounts, and this training was of great benefit to him in later years. Some of the neat copy books that he made in these days are still in existence.

Washington was a tall, strong boy, fond of all kinds of athletics. His playmates found it hard to keep pace with him, but they loved him and looked upon him as a leader who would settle fairly all disputes. He could throw a stone farther than any other boy, and excelled in jumping and wrestling. He was a great lover of horses, and was never afraid to ride any that he could mount. His mother's favorite colt was so wild that no one but George dared to put a bridle on him.

During the last years of his school life Washington studied mathematics and land surveying. The country was still young; immense tracts of land were unexplored; in fact, the entire territory west of the Mississippi River was an untrodden wilderness. So surveying was one of the most useful occupations for which a youth could fit himself.

Lawrence Washington was now married and lived on a large estate on the Potomac River, where George would spend weeks at a time. Lawrence named his plantation Mount Vernon, in memory of Admiral Vernon, an English commander

with whom he had served in a campaign in the West Indies.

Near the broad acres of Mount Vernon lay the immense estate of Lord Fairfax, whose cousin was Lawrence Washington's wife. Fairfax, in his

Mount Vernon

American home, lived exactly like an English country gentleman. He kept many horses and hounds, and enjoyed fox hunts in true English style.

Young George soon became a favorite with this jolly English lord, who delighted to take the boy with him to hunt or to ride over his vast domain. Fairfax was impressed by the lad's skill in managing horses, and by the ability he showed in surveying his brother's fields.

It chanced that Lord Fairfax's property extended so far into the wilderness that he was not certain where it ended. He therefore proposed that Washington should make a survey of his estate, and properly mark its boundaries. The youth was much pleased to undertake the task, and at the beginning of his seventeenth year, with Fairfax's son for companion, he set out to make the survey.

Washington as a Surveyor

Before he returned he had surveyed a large part of the lovely valley through which the Shenandoah River flows. He had learned how to enjoy the rough life of the woods; how to build camp fires and to cook; how to sleep comfortably under the stars.

He had become hardened by long rides and tramps in bad weather, and had met many Indians whom he made his friends. Through the influence of Lord Fairfax, Washington was appointed public surveyor. His measurements were so accurate that they are used to this day.

The story of the French and Indian War has

already been told, but it will be interesting to review Washington's part in it. You will remember that the English had no idea of allowing the French to hold the country between the Mississippi River and the Alleghany Mountains. In the year 1753 they sent a message to the French, commanding them to stop building forts at Presque Isle, Le Bœuf, and Venango.

George Washington was chosen to carry this letter through the wild country to the French commander. Washington was only twenty-one years of age at this time. In the depths of winter, through dense woods and over swollen streams, he traveled on horseback five hundred miles and safely delivered the message. With the sealed reply in his pocket he set out on the perilous homeward journey.

The country was full of Indians, whom the French had tried by every means in their power to win to their side. This made Washington's ride extremely dangerous, for the Indians laid many traps for him. Yet he not only escaped, but sometimes made friends of the very savages who tried to capture him.

The letter which Washington carried back was not satisfactory to the English. "We can plainly see," said they, "that the French will never peaceably give up that country. There is nothing left for us to do but to send troops to the frontier."

The point where the Alleghany and Mononga-

hela rivers join to form the Ohio, seemed to be the best location for a military stronghold, and accordingly the English began to build a fort there. But the French, too, wanted this junction. One day, to the great surprise of the handful of Englishmen at work, one thousand Frenchmen appeared and drove them out of the half-built fort. The French then took possession, finished the work, and named the fort Duquesne, in honor of the governor of Canada.

In the spring of 1754, Colonel Fry was sent out with a force of English to drive the French from this important post. Washington was second in command, but, by the death of his colonel, he soon became head of the expedition.

For one month the English troops marched forward with all possible speed. Then at Great Meadows they met a body of Frenchmen, and no sooner did the enemies meet than firing began. Ten Frenchmen were killed and twenty taken prisoners, while Washington lost only one man.

When the excitement of the first skirmish was over and victory was his, Washington exclaimed, "There is something charming in the sound of the whistling bullets." Years afterward, when he had learned too well what war really meant, he was asked if he remembered ever to have made such a remark: Gravely the great commander replied: "If I said so, it was when I was very young."

Washington realized the danger of so long a march through the enemy's country, so he ordered a halt, and in great haste built Fort Necessity as a place of retreat. Here he was overtaken by a large force of Frenchmen, who outnumbered him four to one. As his provisions were nearly exhausted, he was obliged to surrender and return to Virginia.

General Edward Braddock

The death of Lawrence Washington had placed George in possession of Mount Vernon, which was ever afterward his home. But he had hardly time to begin to enjoy the quiet country life, when again he felt called to public service.

England was now thoroughly alive to the necessity of driving out the French. Regular troops were sent to America in the summer of 1755, under the command of General Braddock. When Washington rode over from Mount Vernon to Alexandria, where the well-trained redcoats were assembling, he felt a strong desire to join Braddock's army, and the general was delighted to have so valuable a man on his staff.

With banners flying and drums beating, the

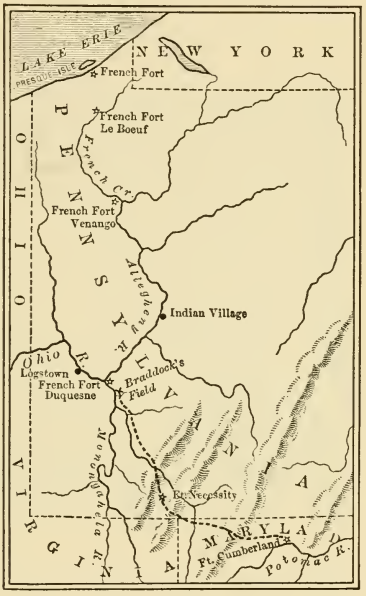
troops left Alexandria on a pleasant April day. Braddock was an experienced commander, but knew nothing of war in the wilderness. When Washington warned him of the dangers from Indians, he haughtily replied: "These savages may indeed be a formidable enemy to raw American militia, but upon the king's regular and disciplined troops, sir, it is impossible they should make an impression."

Brave, but mistaken, General Braddock! The chariot in which he gaily set out, a bodyguard galloping on each side, had to be abandoned in the rough, narrow mountain roads. A hard march indeed he then found it. After a time Washington advised sending out scouting parties to clear the woods of Indians. Braddock laughed at this, and with England's colors flying in the wind pressed boldly on. This was a fatal error; for what Washington feared soon happened.

With terrible yells and war whoops the Indians opened a murderous fire from behind trees and bushes. The poor soldiers were mercilessly shot down without even seeing their enemies. Unused to this kind of fighting, the boasted "king's regulars" became panic-stricken. They did not stop to obey their officers, but fled in terror, firing wildly as they ran. Often they killed their own men.

Braddock remained in the thick of the fight until he was borne from the field fatally wounded.

Washington had two horses shot under him, and four bullets passed through his coat sleeve. The English army was completely routed. Before Braddock breathed his last, he acknowledged to Washington that he should have taken his advice. This defeat was a bitter blow, but preparations were at once begun for greater efforts, and again Washington busied himself in planning the capture of Fort Duquesne.



ROUTE OF BRADDOCK'S EXPEDITION

This proved an easy task. The French had become frightened at the manner in which the colonists of New York and New England were seizing French strongholds in the north, so they resolved to retreat. They blew up the magazine, set fire to the fort, and marched out the very day before Washington's men came up. The English placed their flag on the ruins, rebuilt the fort, and named it Fort Pitt.

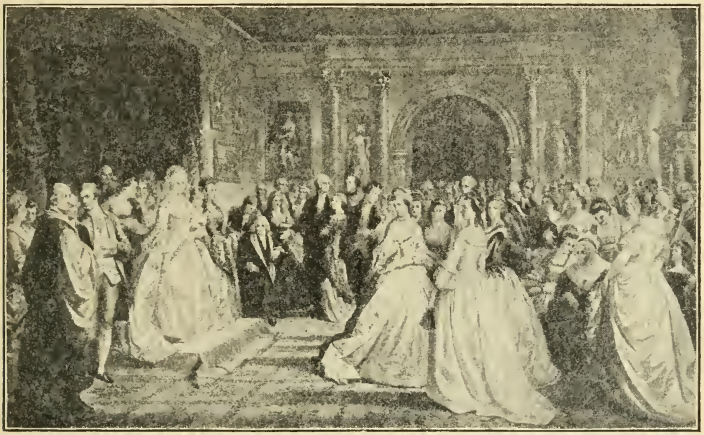
Washington resigned his commission in the army in 1759, and in the same year was married to Mrs.

Martha Custis, a young widow. At this time Washington was well known throughout the colonies. Though only twenty-seven years of age, he was everywhere looked upon as one of the best military leaders. He was made a member of the Virginia legislature, and was present when the House passed a vote of thanks for the services he had rendered his country. The young man, so bold and daring in the saddle and on the battlefield, rose to reply; but he blushed, stammered, and could not utter a word. "Sit down, Mr. Washington," said the Speaker, smiling; "your modesty equals your valor, and that surpasses the power of any language I possess."

Washington loved the country life at Mount Vernon. Instead of trusting his estate to overseers, he looked after all details himself. His early training in the methodical keeping of accounts now stood him in good stead. The handsome mansion became noted for its hospitality. There were many wealthy planters in Virginia, and life there was much gayer than in New England among the strict Puritans. Mrs. Washington rode out in her chariot drawn by four horses, with black postilions in livery. Washington never lost the love of hunting that he acquired when, as a boy, he rode by the side of Lord Fairfax, and many were the fox hunts, ending in jolly dinners, that the master of Mount Vernon enjoyed with his friends. When Mrs. Custis married Washington, she had two charming

children whom he loved as his own, and tenderly cared for. And so passed happily the first years of his married life.

When Patrick Henry returned from the First Continental Congress, some one asked him whom he considered the greatest man at the Congress. Henry's reply was: "If you speak of solid information and



A Reception by Martha Washington

sound judgment, Colonel Washington is unquestionably the greatest man." After the famous Virginia convention at which Henry had declared that the colonists must fight, Washington wrote to his brother: "It is my full intention, if needful, to devote my life and fortune to the cause of liberty."

When the Second Continental Congress met in 1775, the first blood of the Revolution had been shed at Lexington and Concord. It was necessary for Con-

gress to come at once to the support of the brave minutemen, and to organize a regular army with a commander-in-chief. When John Adams rose and said: "I have but one gentleman in mind for that important command, a gentleman from Virginia who is well known to us all," all eyes were upon the modest young colonel, who quickly darted out of the room.

Washington was unanimously chosen commander-in-chief of the army. With a full understanding of the great trust placed in his hands, he solemnly pledged himself to devote his time and energy to the cause of freedom. But he declined to accept any pay for his services.

On the 21st of June, 1775, the commander set out on horseback from Philadelphia for Boston, accompanied by his major generals, Lee and Schuyler. They halted at New York and learned the details of the battle of Bunker Hill. With increased speed Washington pressed on towards Cambridge, where headquarters had been provided for him in a fine old mansion, afterward the home of the poet Longfellow. As he rode into camp, the shouts of the delighted soldiers and the roaring of cannon gave him welcome. Under an old elm tree, which is still standing, General Washington drew his sword, and took formal command of the army.

Captain Daniel Morgan of New Jersey had been with Washington under Braddock. When his young

Virginia friend was made commander-in-chief, Morgan marched his little company of sharpshooters to Cambridge, covering the six hundred miles in three weeks.

As Washington learned that the English in Canada were planning to attack New York, he sent troops northward. The army left behind was without ammunition. There was, therefore, wild rejoic-

WASHINGTON TAKING COMMAND OF THE CONTINENTAL ARMY

ing among the Cambridge troops when General Knox appeared one day with forty cannon. He had captured Fort Ticonderoga, and had dragged the guns all the way to Cambridge with ox teams and sleds.

The time had now come when the British were to be driven out of Boston. One night in March, 1776, under Washington's direction, hundreds of

men worked silently in the moonlight and threw up intrenchments on Dorchester Heights. The next morning the British officers were astonished. Said one of them: "At daybreak we discovered two redoubts on Dorchester Point, and two smaller ones on their flanks. They were all raised during last night with an expedition equal to that of the genii belonging to Aladdin's wonderful lamp. From these hills the Americans command the whole town, so that we must drive them from their post or desert the place."

General Howe, who had forced Prescott from Bunker Hill, could scarcely believe his eyes when he beheld this fortress through the morning fog. "These rebels," he exclaimed, "have done more work in one night than my whole army would have done in a month." Before this he had said that he "hoped the rebels would attack him"; but he was not so anxious to fight now.

He saw, however, that something must be done. So between two and three thousand men were sent on transports to Castle William, where other British troops were quartered. While the troops were on the water, a violent storm came up. The boats could make no headway, but lay tossing at the mercy of the gale for two days, while the rain fell in torrents, and wild winds piled the surf so high that the transports could not land.

When the storm at last was over, General Howe

was vexed to find that the Americans had had time to strengthen their breastworks, and that he could not possibly drive them out. His fleet lay fully exposed to the fire from Dorchester Heights. There was nothing to do but retreat, so he resolved to take his army to Halifax. At four o'clock in the morning the Americans were cheered by the sight of the entire British fleet, laden with soldiers and refugees, putting out to sea.

THE EVACUATION OF BOSTON BY THE BRITISH

What a triumph for Washington! In only a few months, with his farmer soldiers, he had driven out of Boston an army of veterans, commanded by experienced generals. Congress passed a unanimous vote of thanks, and the whole nation praised him.

It was clear from the movements of the British that they meant to make their next attack on New York, for they desired to obtain control of the Hudson

River. Accordingly, Washington hurried his army to that point. Fortifications had been erected on the New York and New Jersey shores, but thousands of British troops were encamped in Brooklyn and on Staten Island. It was impossible for Washington to make out whether the enemy intended to attack New York itself, or that part of Long Island that lay just across the East River. When too late, he found that the latter was to be the fighting point. In the battle of Long Island, waged on the site where Brooklyn now stands, the Americans were defeated.

The night that followed was a sleepless one for the commander-in-chief, and daybreak showed him the dangerous position of his army. With his telescope he could make out that they were completely surrounded. Nothing was left but to withdraw as quickly as possible. The retreat was so well planned that Washington became a greater hero than ever. That night, under cover of darkness, the regiments were marched down to the water and embarked in boats, while sentinels remained in sight above the breastworks, so that the British might not suspect what was happening.

By the time that the last troops pushed out from the shore a thick fog had lowered, preventing the enemy from seeing the American intrenchment. When morning dawned, not an American soldier remained. Washington refused to enter a boat

until the last man was aboard. For forty-eight hours he had had no sleep, and for the greater part of that time had been in the saddle.

The British had yet to learn that Washington would never stay beaten. On Christmas night, 1776,

Passage of the Troops at Long Island

with between two and three thousand men, he crossed the Delaware River, made dangerous by huge cakes of floating ice; and marching nine miles in a blinding snowstorm, surprised the enemy at

Trenton. He captured a thousand prisoners and a large quantity of powder. This brilliant victory, together with his success in the battle of Princeton on January 3 following, cheered the army and the country.

After the battle of Trenton the great commander was sorely in need of money for his army. So

WASHINGTON CROSSING THE DELAWARE
After the painting by Leutze.

he appealed for help to Robert Morris of Philadelphia. Washington's letter was delivered before daybreak. Without waiting for the sun to rise, Mr. Morris started out in the cold winter morning and went from house to house among his friends, begging them to lend him all the money they could spare. In a few hours fifty thousand dollars were on their way to General Washington. Many times afterward

did Mr. Morris lend from his own fortune to the government. There were times when it would have been almost impossible to carry on the war without his aid.

In 1777, at the battle of Brandywine, twenty-five miles from Philadelphia, each side lost over a thou-

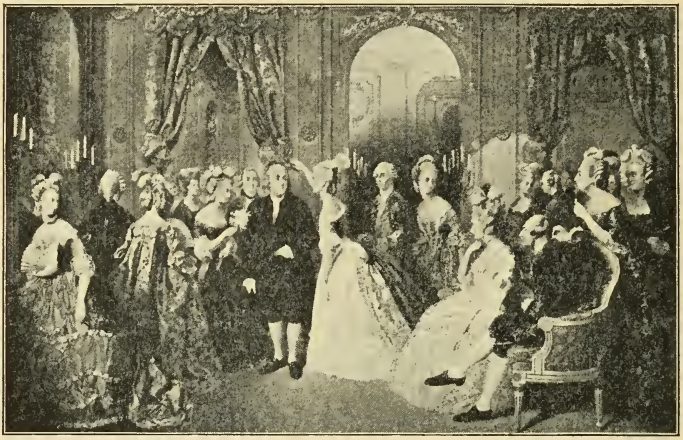
Washington in Winter Quarters at Valley Forge

sand men, and the Americans were finally driven from the field. Again, at Germantown, they met defeat. But their attacks were so daring and their bravery so great that the eyes of Europeans were turned upon America. They found, to their amazement, that untrained farmers could successfully fight disciplined troops, and that the American army was commanded by a military genius.

Our brave soldiers, suffering from cold and hunger, with ragged clothing, and shoes so worn that

blood marked their footsteps, marched to winter quarters at Valley Forge. Many were ill and obliged to seek shelter in farmhouses until trees could be cut down and tents built.

But help was soon to come, for Benjamin Franklin was in France, fighting for his country just as

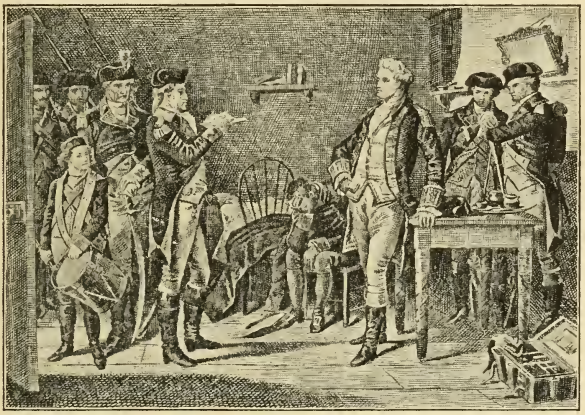


FRANKLIN AT THE COURT OF FRANCE

earnestly as Washington was fighting here, though in a different way. Through Franklin's influence France, ever ready to see England beaten, promised to lend us money and to aid us with soldiers and ships. When this news reached Valley Forge, the poor, half-starved soldiers shouted for joy. Other encouragement came when a splendid German soldier, Baron von Steuben, offered to drill the undisciplined troops.

Among the many bitter trials which the com-

mander-in-chief had to endure was the treason of Benedict Arnold. At the beginning of the war Arnold was one of the bravest fighters in the American army. Washington made him a general and intrusted him with the command of the fort at West Point, on the Hudson River. But in a mad mo-



THE DEATH-WARRANT OF MAJOR ANDRÉ
From an old print.

ment of envy and spite at some fancied wrong, Arnold turned traitor. With a British messenger, Major André, he entered into a plot to surrender West Point to the English. Happily the plot was discovered in time. André was hanged as a spy, and Arnold would have been executed as a traitor had he not escaped into the enemy's lines.

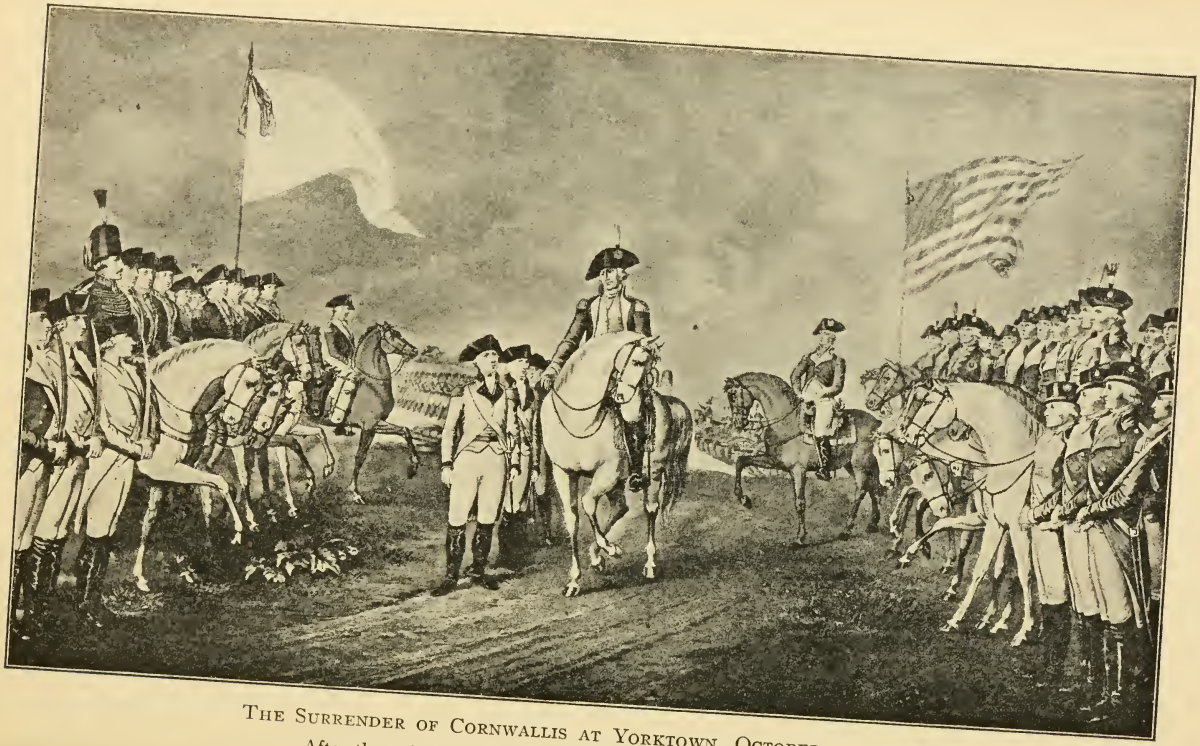
Strong and brave man as he was, General Washington shed tears when he walked into Arnold's house a few hours after the traitor had escaped,

and learned for the first time of the treachery of this trusted officer.

Arnold received a large sum of money for his betrayal, but this did not bring him happiness. After the war he lived in England, but no one trusted him or respected him. On his deathbed he asked for the uniform that he had worn the day he made his escape, and which he had always kept. "Let me die in this old uniform in which I fought so many battles for my country," said he. "God forgive me for ever putting on another."

In the following chapters we shall learn more details of the Revolution, as we study the lives of great men who took part in it. It required seven long years of fighting and suffering to bring the weary struggle to a close. The siege of Yorktown in 1781 ended with the surrender of the British army. In the South Lord Cornwallis commanded the English, and Nathanael Greene the American troops. Slowly but surely Greene drove the enemy out of North and South Carolina and into Virginia.

He had an able assistant in General Marion, who hunted the British army through the low, wet lands of the South, and was so feared and hated by the English that they called him the "Swamp Fox." When Cornwallis reached Virginia, he found American troops under General Lafayette ready to dog the heels of the British and drive them to Yorktown. Here Cornwallis tried to fortify himself.



THE SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS AT YORKTOWN, OCTOBER 19, 1781
After the painting by Trumbull in the Capitol at Washington.

Washington, who was now with that part of the army which lay near New York, watching the movements of General Clinton who commanded the English forces, felt that the hour had come for final victory. French war-ships were in the harbor, and these were immediately sent to Yorktown to prevent the escape of Cornwallis by sea. Then Washington hurried his own troops to Virginia. But while he was secretly rushing his army southward, a considerable force was left in New York. This caused the British general to believe that Washington was still straining every nerve to capture Clinton's army.

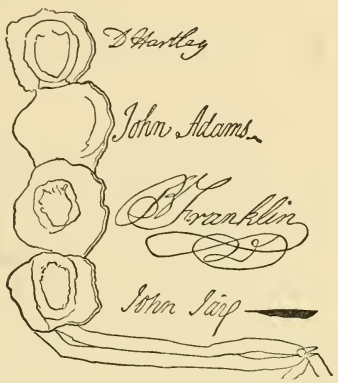
For more than a week after Washington reached Yorktown the city was bombarded night and day. One house is said to have had a thousand cannon balls pass through its walls. Finally, on October 19, 1781, Lord Cornwallis marched out his soldiers and surrendered.

Old Lord Fairfax, who, despite his love for Washington, could never forgive his fighting against the king, heard the news of his young friend's victory and his royal ruler's defeat. Turning to his old negro servant, he said, "Carry me to bed, Joe: it's time for me to die."

The surrender of Cornwallis practically ended the war. At Fraunce's Tavern, in New York, a building still standing, Washington bade his loved officers farewell. Tears filled his eyes as he said, "With a heart full of love and gratitude I now take leave of

you, most devoutly wishing that your latter days may be as prosperous and happy as your former ones have been glorious and honorable."

A general treaty of peace was signed in Paris in January, 1783. The independence so bravely fought for had been won. What should be done now? That was the question asked by the thirteen states.



FACSIMILE OF THE SIGNATURES UPON THE TREATY OF PEACE, 1783

From the original in the State Department, Washington.

The Continental Congress had been made up of men chosen by the people to act for them in carrying on the war. Now that peace was at hand this Congress was no longer enough. Our wisest men foresaw that, if we were to become a nation, we must have a strong national government. So a Federal Convention was called to meet at Philadelphia in 1787. Washington was the presiding officer. Here a great document was drawn up and signed by thirty-nine delegates. It was called the Constitution of the United States. Washington was its first signer, and Benjamin Franklin, then in his eighty-second year, was the oldest man to write his signature to this famous paper, that is still the law of the nation.

When Washington resigned his generalship with the coming of peace, he had looked forward to years of quiet happiness at Mount Vernon. But the nation, still young and weak, felt its further need of his aid. The Constitution provided that a President should be chosen, and George Washington was the unanimous choice of the people. His country could not let him enjoy the rest he had so gloriously earned.

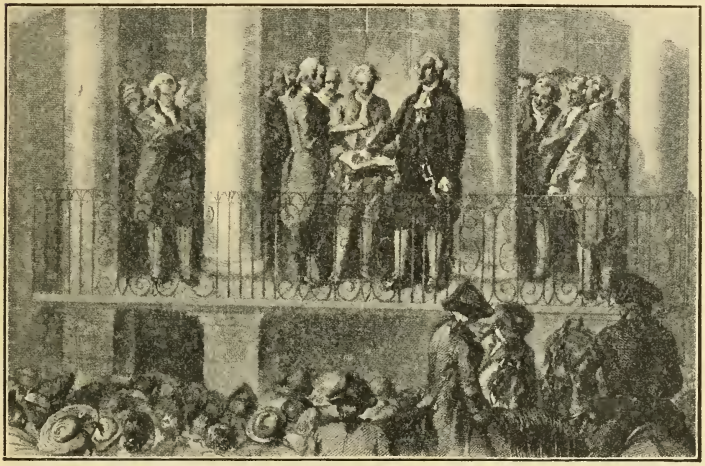
New York City was selected as the capital of the United States. On April 30, 1789, Washington took the oath of office on the balcony of a building that stood where the subtreasury on Wall Street may now be seen. Shouts went up from thousands of throats, myriads of flags waved in the breeze, and cannons boomed a greeting to the first President.

Do not think that Washington had an easy task before him. Years of warfare had laid the country waste and burdened her with a heavy debt. The only way to meet this debt was by taxation, and the American people had learned to resent the word "tax." Also, each colony had been in the habit of governing itself, and found it difficult to submit to any higher authority.

Many serious questions were discussed, misunderstandings and disappointments arose, and the path that Washington and his cabinet had to tread was a thorny one. The eyes of all Europe were upon the young republic, watching the experiment of a

new form of government, in a land made desolate by war. "Surely such an unheard-of thing cannot succeed," said the nations across the sea.

That America came safely through this great crisis, to the surprise of the world, was due to the wise guidance of Washington. The new nation



WASHINGTON TAKING THE OATH AS PRESIDENT, APRIL 30, 1789

had made no mistake in choosing its leader; for this man proved himself as great in peace as in war. That he was "first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen," was well said of him after his death. One by one the many difficulties were mastered. The objection to taxation was gradually overcome, jealousies and quarrels were satisfactorily adjusted. As the people went back to their farms, mills, and shops, the country assumed a

cheerful aspect. Corn and wheat began to grow on fields so lately crushed by the tramp of soldiers. Gradually the terrors of war were forgotten and fresh hope filled every heart.

For eight years Washington served his country as President, but firmly declined a second reëlection. He was allowed to retire to his beloved home with the respect, affection, and loyalty of every person in

The Gold Medal presented to Washington by Congress

the land. "We feel like children just released from school," said Mrs. Washington, when they were back at Mount Vernon.

But only two short years were left to the "Father of his Country." While riding in a hard storm in December, 1799, he caught a severe cold, and in two days was dead. In the hour that he was laid to rest at Mount Vernon the tears of the nation told its grief. Congress had adjourned immediately on hearing of his death, and for the remainder of the session the members of the House wore mourning,

while in every part of the Union there were public testimonials of grief. Even British ships lowered their flags to half-mast, while France suspended crape for ten days from all her public standards and flags.

"The fame of Washington," says John Fiske, "stands apart from every other in history. Under all dissensions and amid all the storms of party his precepts and example speak to us from the grave with a paternal appeal; and his name — by all revered — forms a universal tie of brotherhood, — a watchword of our Union."

"Thus 'mid the wreck of thrones shall live
Unmarred, undimmed, our hero's fame,
And years succeeding years shall give
Increase of honors to his name."

Things to Remember

George Washington of Virginia was chosen commander-in-chief of the American army in the War of the Revolution.

He took command at Cambridge, Massachusetts, in 1775. His headquarters was the mansion afterward the home of the poet Longfellow.

In his conduct of the war Washington showed such great military genius as to command the attention not only of America but of all Europe.

The Revolution ended with the victory of the American army at Yorktown in 1781.

A treaty of peace between England and America was signed in Paris in 1783.

In 1787 a famous convention met at Philadelphia. It framed

the Constitution of the United States. This Constitution is still the law of our nation.

Washington was chosen first President of the United States in 1789. He was reëlected President in 1792.

He showed himself as great in peace as in war, and his services as President were as valuable as those rendered his country during the Revolution.

He died at the age of sixty-seven, loved and honored for his invaluable help in freeing America from the tyranny of King George III, and in enabling her to become a nation respected by all Europe.

Map Work. — *a.* Locate Fredericksburg, Mount Vernon, Alleghany and Monongahela rivers, Presque Isle, Fort Le Bœuf, Venango, Fort Duquesne, Fort Necessity. *b.* Locate Boston, Brooklyn, New York, the Delaware River, Trenton, Princeton, West Point, Brandywine Creek, Philadelphia, Germantown, Valley Forge, Yorktown.

Memory Selection. — Bryant, "Song of Marion's Men."

XXV. PHILIP SCHUYLER

Born 1733 — Died 1804

God bless the Flag and its loyal defenders,
While its broad folds o'er the battlefield wave,
Till the dim star-wreath rekindle its splendors,
Washed from its stains in the blood of the brave!
HOLMES's "God save the Flag."

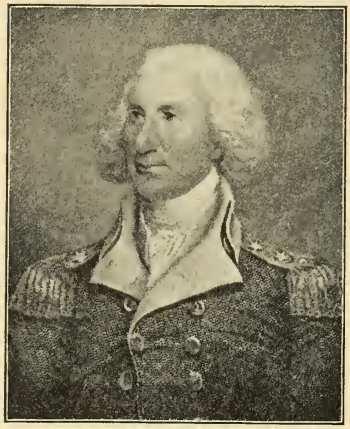
WASHINGTON had many brave generals, but none was more noble or more unselfish in his devotion to his country than Philip Schuyler.

Schuyler's Dutch ancestors had come from Amsterdam and settled in Albany, where Philip was born. The boy received a good education and became a rich and influential citizen. When the war with England began he owned much valuable property, — hundreds of acres of woodland near Albany, and boats on which the timber was carried down the Hudson River to New York. He married a descendant of Killian Van Rensselaer, one of the first patroons who took up a grant of land in the Hudson valley.

Philip Schuyler had many noble qualities, and chief among them was patriotism. He fought bravely in the French and Indian War. When he was sent as one of New York's delegates to the Con-

tinental Congress, he and Washington became acquainted and were soon firm friends.

After the American army had defeated the British at Trenton and Princeton, there was some doubt in Washington's mind as to what the next move of the enemy would be. At length it became clear.



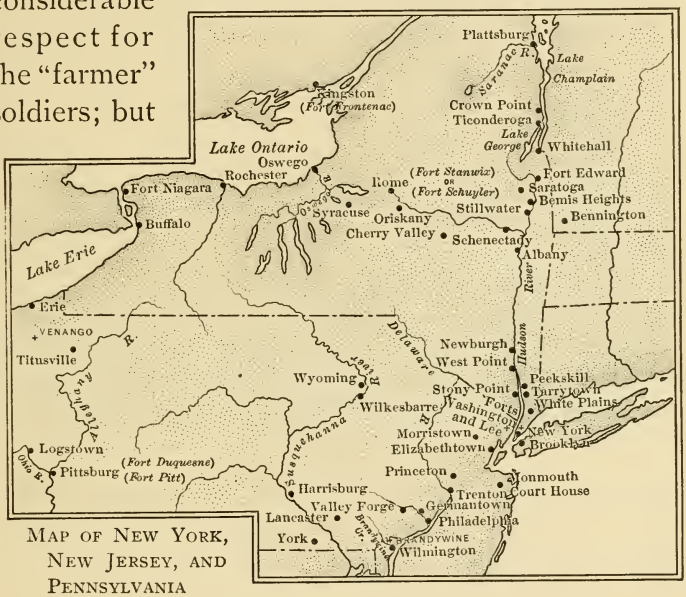
PHILIP SCHUYLER
After the painting by J. Trumbull.

"Nothing," thought the British, "can be so harmful to the Yankees as for us to get possession of the Hudson River. By thus controlling New York state we can keep the New England soldiers from joining Washington's army." Accordingly, the English general, Burgoyne, received orders in the summer of 1777 to march his men down from Canada by way of Lake Champlain, take Fort Ticonderoga, and proceed to Albany. A second army, under Colonel St. Leger, was ordered to start from Montreal, ascend the St. Lawrence to Lake Ontario, capture Fort Stanwix on the Mohawk River, and join Burgoyne at Albany; while Howe was to bring up a third army from New Jersey.

If this plan had succeeded, General Washington would have been indeed in a bad plight. It failed

because of the foresight, zeal, and heroism of the American commanders, and particularly because of the skillful manner in which Philip Schuyler controlled the army in New York.

General Howe, who had had desperate fighting against Washington in New Jersey, began to have considerable respect for the "farmer" soldiers; but



MAP OF NEW YORK, NEW JERSEY, AND PENNSYLVANIA

Burgoyne, though brave, was boastful. He declared, "If the king will give me ten thousand men, I will promenade through America."

King George quickly granted this request. Ten thousand men were furnished, — some English, many Hessians, or Germans, whom the English

hired to fight for them, and Indians who had been won to the British side. Popular feeling against the war was so strong in England that there was difficulty in getting enough native-born soldiers to send to America, so Germans were paid to serve in the British army.

Burgoyne's "promenade" started out very well. General Schuyler had been strengthening the northern defenses, and no one dreamed that Fort Ticonderoga would not withstand British attack. But it chanced that near the fort there was a high, steep hill; and Burgoyne saw that if he could get men and cannon up that hill, he could fire down into the fort, and the Americans would be helpless.

Under cover of the night, therefore, he made this hard march, and the next morning General St. Clair was astonished to find his men at the mercy of the English guns. He was obliged to retreat, and hastily abandoning the fort, marched southward. The British followed close on his heels, and it was only by leaving baggage and ammunition behind him that St. Clair managed to escape to Fort Edward and join General Schuyler.

Burgoyne was so jubilant over this victory that he triumphantly sent the news to England. When the king received it, he rushed into the queen's apartment and cried, "I have beat them! I have beat all the Americans!"

But, unfortunately for the king, *all* the Americans were not at Ticonderoga. To be sure, Burgoyne had not far to march to reach Albany, where he expected to join the other two divisions of the English army, and give the king still further cause for

Fort Ticonderoga

rejoicing. But General Schuyler resolved to make this march the hardest of Burgoyne's life.

Only one road led through the forest, and the Americans fell to work with a will to make it impassable. Schuyler had only a few thousand soldiers at Fort Edward; but provided with axes, spades, and torches, they worked night and day. They chopped down hundreds of trees so that they fell directly across the road. Fifty bridges were destroyed. Streams were dammed so that the water

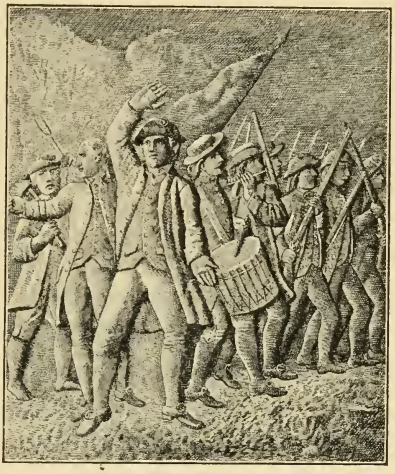
overflowed the banks, and made the ground so swampy that the English could not cross with heavy cannon. For miles on either side of the road all cattle and provisions of every kind were put out of reach of the British; for Burgoyne was depending upon the resources of the country to feed his army as he marched.

The Americans worked in desperation, goaded on not alone by the defeat of Fort Ticonderoga, but by the horrible outrages committed by the Indians with the English army. Jenny McCrea, the beautiful daughter of a clergyman, had recently been seized and cruelly murdered by a party of Indians, and the country rang with the news of this and other such hideous deeds.

Schuyler's men had indeed made a hard "promenade" for Burgoyne. It took him twenty days to cover twenty-four miles. Footsore, hungry, and exhausted, the British at last reached Fort Edward. And what did they find? Not an American in the fort, not a pound of powder or shot! The wary Schuyler had by this time crossed the Hudson and pitched his tents at Saratoga. Every day that he could delay British attack meant just so much gain, for Washington was hurrying troops to his aid.

Burgoyne was now sadly in need of ammunition. He therefore chose about a thousand of his men, mostly Hessians and Indians, and sent them to Bennington, where he had heard the Yankees had a

large supply of military stores. But Colonel John Stark and his stalwart "Green Mountain Boys" were carefully guarding Bennington. Stark had fought in the French and Indian War, at Bunker Hill, Trenton, and Princeton. He was considered one of the best officers in the American army.

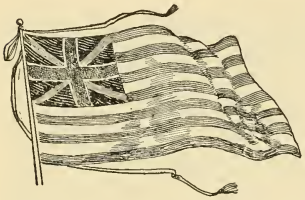


THE RALLY OF THE PEOPLE
From the bas-relief by Markham, on the monument at Saratoga.

When news came that the English were marching toward Bennington, men and boys armed themselves with whatever weapons they could find and started for Stark's camp. They carried with them pewter spoons, plates, and porringers to be melted into bullets. On the morning before the fight it is said that General Stark mounted a rail fence and thus addressed his soldiers: "My men, we are about to fight the Hessians and Indians. The English pay the Hessians seven pounds tenpence a man. If you are worth more, prove it!"

For two hours the battle raged. The Americans had one rusty old cannon which they had dragged for miles on the wheels of a cart. When the cannon

balls gave out, they loaded it with stones. So furious was the attack that the Indians in terror fled screaming to the woods. The Hessians were either shot down or taken prisoners. Less than one hundred men returned of the thousand Burgoyne had sent out. "The woods are full of Yankees! The woods are full of Yankees!" shouted the few half-crazed Indians who finally made their way back to the British camp.

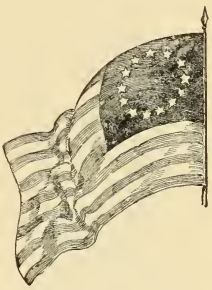


Flag of the United Colonies, 1775–1777

This was not the only bitter disappointment in store for Burgoyne. St. Leger's wing of the army had advanced from Oswego through the wilderness as far as Oriskany, when it was met by American troops under brave old General Herkimer on their way to Fort Stanwix. The opposing forces fought in deadly battle. General Herkimer was shot and mortally wounded; but he refused to leave the field, or even to rest. He ordered the saddle to be taken from his dead horse and placed at the foot of a tree. Then he sat down, coolly lighted his pipe, and continued to direct and cheer his men until the British were driven back in confusion.

This happened in August, 1777, the very year in which Congress chose the stars and stripes for our country's flag. After the battle of Oriskany the new national banner of red, white, and blue was flung to

the breeze for the first time, over Fort Stanwix. It had been made of such materials as were at hand, — a red flannel skirt which a soldier's wife gladly gave, a white shirt, and an old blue jacket. Nevertheless, it proudly waved, and the sight angered St. Leger as a red rag angers a bull. He vowed that he would carry the flag away with him or die in the attempt.



First Flag of the United States
Adopted by Congress in 1777.

But General Schuyler was just as determined that the precious emblem should not leave the fort. When news of the fight at Oriskany reached him at his camp, he called his officers and asked who would volunteer to march with a relief force to Fort Stanwix. "I will," quickly replied Benedict Arnold. "General Washington sent me here to make myself of use. I will go." The drum beat its call for volunteers, and more than a thousand men responded. When Arnold's regiment was within twenty miles of Fort Stanwix, some Tory spies were captured, among them a half-witted fellow named Yan Yost. Then Arnold determined to make use of a trick in the hope of frightening St. Leger's army. First he condemned Yan Yost to death for treason; and when the boy's mother and brother pleaded for his life, Arnold promised to release him on certain conditions. Yan was to take off his coat

and have it shot full of bullet holes; then he was to run to St. Leger's camp and tell the English that thousands of American soldiers were approaching. "If you will do that," said Arnold, "and then come back here, you and your mother and brother may go free."

The trick worked perfectly. When St. Leger saw the breathless boy and heard his story, he asked how many Americans were marching toward him. The lad pointed to the countless leaves of the trees overhead, and St. Leger waited no longer to capture the American flag. Believing that Schuyler's whole army was near, he fled toward Canada in such haste that tents, powder, and cannon fell into Arnold's hands.

Burgoyne was now in a very dangerous position. Howe was to have joined him from New Jersey, but he had been prevented by General Washington. St. Leger, who had marched his men down from Canada to crush the Americans, was now swiftly marching them back again. On all sides American regiments were cutting off Burgoyne's retreat to Canada. His men were in sore need of provisions. He must push on toward Albany with all speed.

Sad to say, General Schuyler was not to command the colonial forces long. In those dark days when most Americans thought only of saving their country, there were still a few who cared but for themselves and their own glory. General Gates was one of these.

He was jealous of Washington's confidence in Schuyler, and he managed to have Congress appoint himself to Schuyler's place. But Philip Schuyler was one of those noble souls who would not allow a personal injury to stand in the way of his duty to his countrymen. Though forced to give up his command, he kept at work. Arnold, too, came in for a share of Gates's jealousy, and was compelled to leave his regiment.

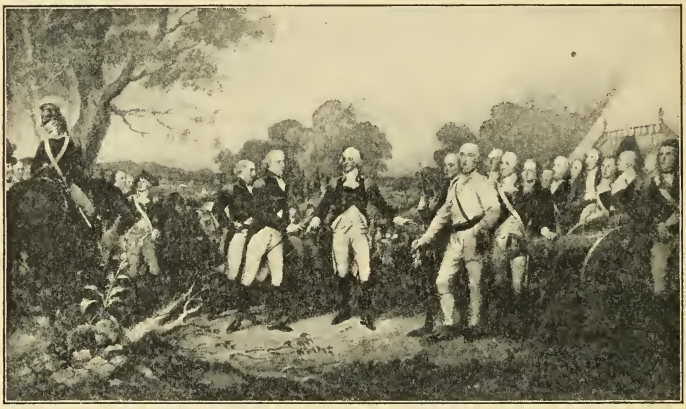
An American Soldier in 1777

Burgoyne marched as rapidly as possible toward Albany, and met the American army at Bemis Heights. A battle was fought that lasted several hours, but neither side could claim victory. For more than a fortnight afterward, the two armies lay at Stillwater watching each other, like two tigers ready to spring.

On the morning of October 17, 1777, began the battle of Saratoga, the first decisive victory of the war. Arnold stood impatiently watching his gallant troops until he could bear his inactivity no longer. Jumping on his horse, he galloped into the thick of the fight. The sight of their old commander cheered his comrades to greater efforts. Fiercely the battle raged, and at last the English were driven from the field. Brave General Morgan shared with Arnold

the glory of this American victory. Gates was not even on the field.

A bullet entered Arnold's leg, and his horse was killed under him. It would have been better had he died in that moment of triumph. Afterward, when he had turned traitor, he captured an American officer. "What would happen to me if I were



THE SURRENDER OF BURGOYNE, SARATOGA

caught?" asked the unhappy Arnold. Quickly the officer replied: "Your lame leg, wounded at Saratoga, would be cut off and buried with the honors of war. The rest of your body would be hanged."

Nothing but surrender was left to the proud Burgoyne. Six thousand of his men were taken prisoners, and great quantities of ammunition fell into the hands of the Americans. When news of the battle of Saratoga was carried across the water, many

people in Great Britain were glad to hear of Burgoyne's defeat, for they thought the king had done wrong to bring on war with his colonies. William Pitt, always America's true friend, rose in Parliament and said: "My lords, *you cannot conquer America.* And if I were an American, while a foreign troop was landed in my country, I would never lay down my arms — never — never — never!" Commissioners were sent to America to try to make peace, but England was not yet willing to give the colonists their independence.

The welcome news of Saratoga reached the American soldiers in that hard winter at Valley Forge. And when France heard of it, she said: "Benjamin Franklin is right. These raw American soldiers can defeat English regulars. They deserve our help."

Under the stars and stripes that had so lately kindled St. Leger's indignation, the Americans had marched to victory. Everybody knew that this triumph belonged not to Gates but to Schuyler, Morgan, and Arnold. In this moment of general rejoicing Schuyler did not forget the suffering of the English. He understood the hardships they had passed through, and how much they needed food and care. He saw to it that they were treated with every kindness that a humane victor can bestow upon unhappy prisoners.

After the battle of Saratoga Schuyler retired from active military life; but in other ways he continued

to serve his country as long as it had need of him. For years he was a member of Congress, and was often summoned from his duties there to consult with Washington in regard to plans for carrying on the war. In no one of his counselors did the commander in chief feel more confidence than in Schuyler. The great Daniel Webster once declared that Philip Schuyler stood not far below Washington in the service he rendered his country. After the war was over and Washington was serving as President, Schuyler became of further aid. He was made surveyor general and took an active part in settling disputes with the Indians.

Schuyler was one of the first to propose building a canal in New York state that should connect the waters of the Great Lakes with the Hudson River. He subscribed generously from his large fortune for the support of Union College at Schenectady. His fine old mansion at Albany was celebrated for its hospitality. Franklin and Lafayette were among the many distinguished men who were entertained within its walls.

General Schuyler died in his seventy-second year, and was buried in the Albany Rural Cemetery with military honors. His grave is marked with a tall granite column. All honor to the memory of the man who, while smarting under the sting of unjust treatment, was great enough to say, "My country before everything."

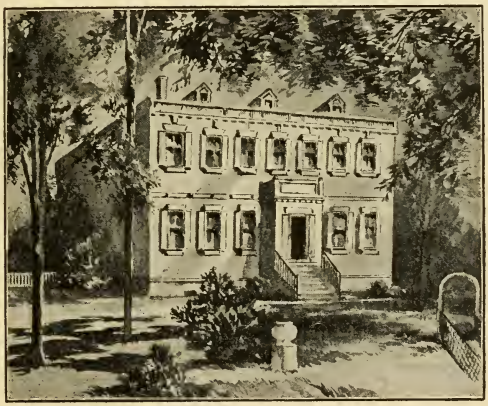
Things to Remember

General Philip Schuyler of New York was chiefly responsible for the first decisive American victory of the Revolution. This was the battle of Saratoga and was fought in the year 1777.

The battle of Saratoga was one of the most important battles in history. It encouraged the Americans to continue the struggle for independence, and discouraged the English to such an extent that they were ready to talk of a treaty of peace.

It showed France that Americans had great military skill, and led her to yield to Franklin's request for help.

Map Work. — Locate Montreal, Lake Champlain, Lake George, Ticonderoga, Bennington, Fort Edward, Bemis Heights, Stillwater, Oswego, Fort Stanwix, Oriskany.



General Schuyler's Home in Albany

XXVI. NATHANAEL GREENE

Born 1742 — Died 1786

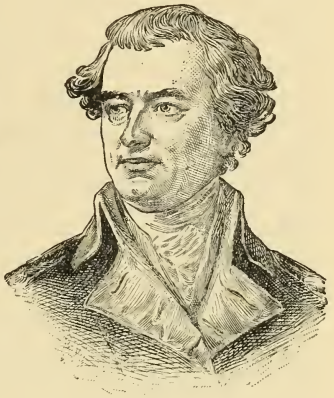
Sleep, soldiers ! still in honored rest,
Your truth and valor wearing ;
The bravest are the tenderest —
The loving are the daring.
— TAYLOR'S "A Song of the Camp."

THE principle for which the Americans were fighting was such an important one that even a Quaker who hated war would often turn soldier. Nathanael Greene was born and brought up in Rhode Island, where his father and grandfather had led the quiet life of the Friends. Perhaps the very air of freedom that Nathanael breathed in that colony, founded by liberty-loving Roger Williams, made him more ready to fight for the independence of America.

The young Quaker grew up a strong boy, industrious, self-reliant, fond of athletics, and able to surpass most of his playmates in outdoor sports. He loved books, also, and urged his father to provide better teachers for him than were to be found in the little Quaker community of Warwick.

He worked in his father's fields, the mill, and blacksmith shop. He read, studied, and played whenever he could.

Greene was always kind and gentle, but he was also firm in his own convictions. When eighteen years old, he visited New York at a time when many people had the smallpox. He insisted upon being vaccinated, though vaccination was then forbidden by law in Rhode Island and Massachusetts, and the prejudice against it was very strong. Young Greene's friends were astonished, but he was willing to think for himself and to take the consequences. Not long afterward his father became involved in a lawsuit, so the youth promptly set himself to the study of law, — another instance of his eagerness to prepare for any emergency.



NATHANAEL GREENE

It is not surprising, therefore, that when the war clouds began to gather Nathanael should have turned his attention to military matters. From the best books he obtained a knowledge of war that was soon put into practice.

A bitter disappointment threatened him at the beginning of his career. When his friends and neighbors formed a company for military drill, a slight limp in his walk was at first thought to un-

fit him for service. It would have been a sad mistake if he had been left out, for no other of the "Kentish Guards," as the company called itself, ever became so famous a soldier as Nathanael Greene.

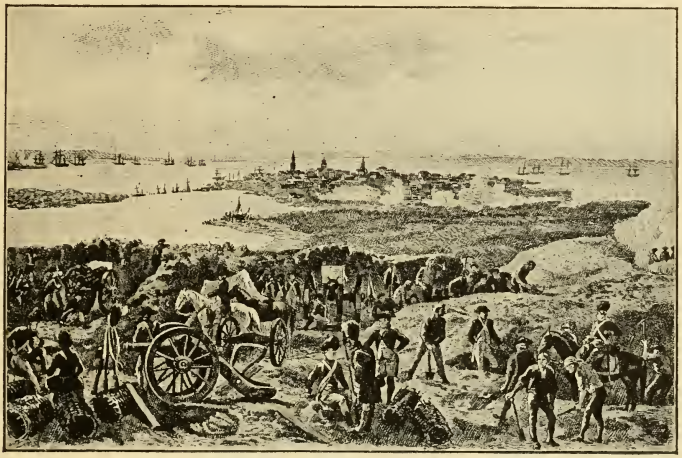
Greene was only a private when he entered the ranks, but he began to work at once for his company. He drove to Boston, purchased a musket, and hid it under straw in the bottom of the wagon, that the Tories might not see it. Also, he succeeded in bringing back, as drillmaster for the "Guards," a trained English soldier who had come over to the American side.

Greene quickly rose from the ranks. When news of the battle of Bunker Hill reached Rhode Island, three regiments were quickly raised to march to the scene of trouble. Nathanael Greene was chosen brigadier general of this little band. He led his troops to Boston, and when Washington arrived at Cambridge, Greene was selected as the officer to welcome the new commander-in-chief.

The young Quaker was placed in charge of a brigade at Dorchester Heights, and had the pleasure of seeing the English march out of Boston. General Washington soon discovered that Greene was a valuable man and made him major general in the regular army, where he did good service in New York and New Jersey.

The British, defeated in both of these states in 1776 and 1777, turned their attention to the South.

They had captured Savannah and Augusta, and restored the royal governor in place of the one that the colonists had chosen. In addition to this, Sir Henry Clinton had brought his redcoats down



THE SIEGE OF CHARLESTON

from New York, and had driven the American army out of Charleston.

As they now held possession of Georgia and South Carolina, it was an easy matter for the English to get by water all the supplies of food and ammunition that they needed. They were thus saved the trouble of carrying them over land.

This condition of things in the South caused Washington great anxiety, and he desired to send General Greene to take command of the southern forces. But Gates, who had tried to steal Schuyler's

victory at Saratoga, was still influential with Congress, which forced Washington to send Gates, instead of Greene. This was in the winter of 1780.

The country paid dearly for this interference with Washington's plans. Gates mismanaged everything that he undertook. In the battle of Camden, in what was perhaps the worst American defeat of the war, Gates's troops were almost entirely destroyed. He himself acknowledged that he was left with "only the shadow of an army."

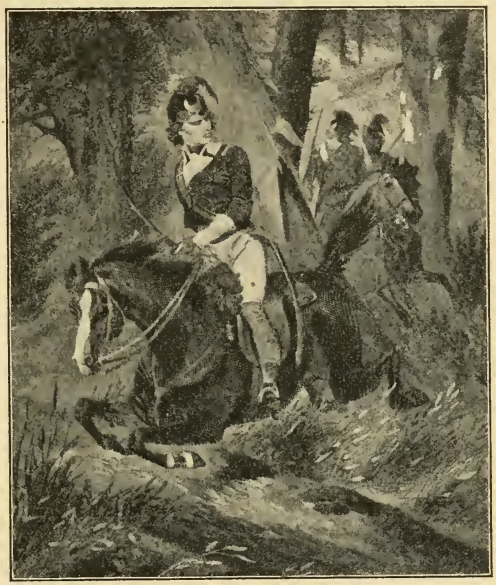
Something must be done, and Washington now hurried Greene to the scene of disaster. In the meantime, all over the mountainous country of the Carolinas, men formed themselves into little bands to defend their homes against the raids of the British soldiers. Parties of redcoats roamed over the hills, plundered and burned houses, and murdered the inhabitants.

General Francis Marion, the "Swamp Fox," came to be looked upon as the leader of these mountaineers. He knew every foot of the country, was fearless and untiring. He and his comrades were poorly clad, and were often without blankets to sleep in. They frequently had little to eat, but they never complained.

While the main English army under Cornwallis was resting after its defeat of Gates, Major Ferguson was sent out with twelve hundred men, under orders to "scour the country for provisions and frighten

the inhabitants into coming over to the Tory side." He was then to join Cornwallis in North Carolina.

But this mission was not so easy to accomplish as Cornwallis had expected. News soon reached Ferguson that bands of hardy mountaineers were on his trail. Thick and fast they gathered round him, clad in homespun garments and armed with long rifles and hunting knives.



FRANCIS MARION

It was not long before Ferguson and his soldiers were fleeing before these daring backwoodsmen. On a steep hill, known as Kings Mountain, the British intrenched themselves. The sides of the mountain were covered with forest trees and gigantic bowlders. But nothing could daunt the Americans in pursuit. They separated into three divisions which climbed the mountain at the same time, each from a different

direction. Attacked on all sides, Ferguson's men were soon beaten. He himself rode boldly among his troops, trying in vain to rally his terrified soldiers. At last he was shot from his white horse, and the animal galloped, riderless, down the steep hillside. The English hoisted the white flag of surrender.

The winter of 1780 had been one of terrible suffering to the American troops, — perhaps the hardest of the seven long years of war, — but the victory of Kings Mountain gave them fresh courage. The soldiers were thoroughly disheartened. They lacked sufficient food and clothing, and many were ill. After his defeat at Camden, Gates had been unable to control his men.

Such was the wretched condition of the southern forces when General Greene took command. Out of Gates's entire army there were left only about two thousand men, and less than half that number were able to fight. There was no money and only a few days' provisions. Encamped not far away, lay an army of over three thousand well-fed, well-clothed, victorious British troops.

You can readily see how much work there was for Nathanael Greene to do. The slight limp that so nearly kept him out of the ranks was lost sight of now. Cool judgment, kindness, patience, energy, hopefulness — these were the qualities that counted in this crisis.

He set to work with a will, and soon won the

respect and affection of the troops. He contrived to get better food for them and to make every one more comfortable. Gradually he brought back the old spirit of self-reliance and hope.

No one knew better than the commander in chief how hard a problem Greene had before him, and able men were sent to his aid — Daniel Morgan, the "sharpshooter," William Washington, and Henry Lee, who was known as " Light-horse Harry."

At Cowpens, in January, 1781, a division of Greene's army under Morgan met the English troops under the famous General Tarleton. With a much smaller army Morgan won the day. At last our soldiers in the South had reason to take courage. At Spartanburg, in South Carolina, a large town seven miles from Cowpens, is a tall monument and on its top a bronze figure. The inscription reads: —

> "To the American Soldiers, who, on the Field of Cowpens, January 17, 1781, fought victoriously for the right of Self-government and Civil Liberty. The unanimous resolve of the Congress of the United States crowns this memorial column with the form and face of General Daniel Morgan, the hero of Cowpens, who, on that field, was victorious in the great cause of American independence."

Cornwallis, the head of the English army in the South, was furious when he heard of Tarleton's defeat. The "hero of Cowpens" knew perfectly well that Cornwallis would send a fresh

force against him. Morgan felt that his tired men were not strong enough to win a second battle, so he lost no time in making a retreat.

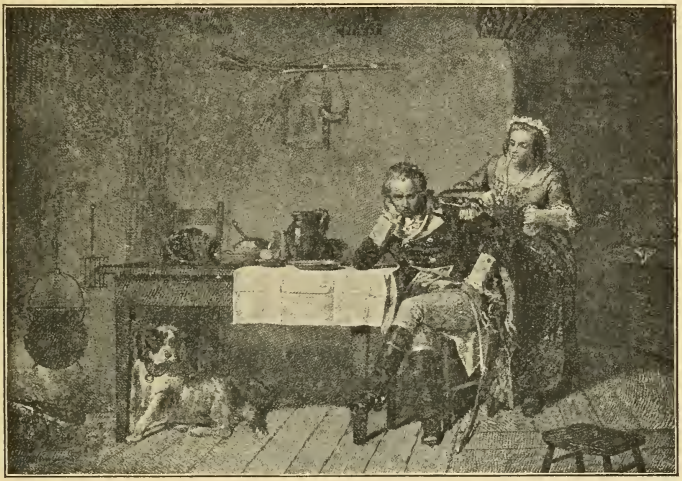
At dusk his army crossed the Catawba River. Hot in pursuit, the English soldiers reached this stream a few hours later, but rather than risk crossing it in the dark they waited until morning. A heavy rain fell during the night. The water rose rapidly, and the enemy were so delayed that Morgan was able to reach Greene's army in safety.

General Greene saw that it would not be safe for his men to attempt to fight again while they were in such a weak condition. So he began the famous retreat that ended in American victory.

This retreat was thought out with great care and skill. By the most clever planning he brought both divisions of his little army safely together at Guilford, where he expected that fresh troops from Virginia would await him.

But these regiments had not yet arrived, so Greene continued his retreat toward them. If only he could manage to get across the river Dan and into Virginia before Cornwallis could overtake him! It was a weary march, but the hardships were patiently endured. Week after week he marched his little band from point to point — over hills and across streams that, for lack of bridges or boats, had to be forded. Nor did he dare to forget for an instant the dangerous game he was playing with Cornwallis.

One night, after a long ride in a drenching rain, Greene alighted at a little inn in Salisbury. In reply to a question the weary general said, "Yes, I am hungry, tired, penniless, and alone." The landlord's wife overheard the remark. In a short time a



THE LANDLORD'S WIFE AND GENERAL GREENE

hot supper was placed before the hungry soldier. Then, handing him two little bags of silver that she had managed to save, the good woman said, "Take these; you will want them, and I can do without them." This spirit of sacrifice on the part of the men and women of America was the only thing that made it possible to carry on the war.

At last the Dan was safely crossed. Greene had arranged many days in advance for boats to carry his men over, but when the pursuing British troops

reached the shore, they could find no way of getting to the opposite bank. For two hundred miles Cornwallis had followed close on the heels of his enemies, but now he was obliged to halt.

As soon as the Americans were rested and reenforced by the Virginia troops, Greene recrossed the river, and at Guilford Court House, on March 15, he fought a battle with Cornwallis. Though the English claimed a victory, they were so worn out that they retired to Wilmington.

General Greene now began another rapid march to the South. He wrote Washington: "I am determined to carry the war into South Carolina. The enemy will be obliged to follow us, or give up the posts in that state." His plan was to cut Cornwallis off from the English army at Charleston, and thus prevent his getting the much-needed food and supplies.

Greene was completely successful. One after another the British forts in South Carolina were captured. "We fight, get beat, rise, and fight again," wrote Greene. The English began to despair — the Americans to triumph.

At the battle of Eutaw Springs the Americans won a great victory. The enemy was pursued by the regiments of Generals Marion and Lee for more than twenty-five miles, and over half of the English army was lost.

Greene had done what he set out to do. He had driven the British out of North and South

Carolina into Virginia. We have already learned how Cornwallis was forced to shut himself up in Yorktown, and how Washington marched his army down from New York and compelled his surrender.

Few of the world's great soldiers ever accomplished such wonderful work with so small an army as did Nathanael Greene in the southern states. Next to Washington he was the greatest general of the Revolutionary War.

All along the line of Greene's homeward march honors were heaped upon him. Congress gave him a vote of thanks, and the grateful state of Georgia presented him with a plantation at Mulberry Grove. Here, two years after peace was declared, General Greene brought his wife to live.

This great soldier, who had endured so many hardships in war, died from the effects of sunstroke at the age of forty-four. The whole country mourned his loss, and statues stand in public parks to the memory of "the man who saved the South."

THINGS TO REMEMBER

Nathanael Greene of Rhode Island, next to Washington, was the greatest general of the Revolutionary War.

His ability saved the American army in the South when it had been almost entirely destroyed.

He drove the British out of North and South Carolina into Virginia, and made it possible to end the war.

Map Work. — Locate Savannah, Charleston, Camden, Kings Mountain, Cowpens, Guilford Court House, Wilmington, N.C., Yorktown. (See map, page 15.)

XXVII. JOHN PAUL JONES

Born 1747 — Died 1792

Bright flag at yonder tapering mast,
  Fling out your field of azure blue;
Let star and stripe be westward cast,
  And point as Freedom's eagle flew.
Strain home! O lithe and quivering spars!
Point home! my country's flag of stars!
— WILLIS'S "Going Home."

AMERICA is to-day proud of her navy. When the great battle ships come together for review in New York harbor, or at Hampton Roads, or at the Golden Gate, thousands enjoy the magnificent sight. How bold and powerful they look, those giants of the sea, as they ride on the dancing water.

Yet, at the beginning of the Revolutionary War, America was quite at the mercy of England on the sea. The only vessels that the colonists owned were schooners and sloops that had been built for fishing or for trading along the coast.

As soon as war became certain, the Americans knew they must have war-ships, and they began to build them as fast as they could. But money was scarce. The colonists could not build and equip a navy equal to England's, which was the strongest navy of all Europe.

But if large ships and heavy guns were not to be had, there was no lack of brave men who dared to put to sea in small boats to capture English ships. Among these men was Paul Jones, who became the first great naval hero in American history.

Paul Jones was the son of a Scotch gardener. He spent his childhood in a little fishing village in Scotland, where he learned to steer a boat, to haul a fishing line, and to love the ocean. At twelve years of age he was as strong and as well able to care for himself as most youths of sixteen; so his father yielded to his desire to go to sea.

PAUL JONES
After the etching by A. Varen.

Nothing could exceed the joy of young Paul when, in 1759, he left England as "shipmaster's apprentice" on board the *Friendship*. This vessel was bound for Virginia and the West Indies. Now not only would Paul realize his dream of life on the ocean, but he could also visit his older brother William, who had settled in America.

William Jones wished Paul to remain on the Virginia plantation, but the boy could not be coaxed into giving up a seafaring life. For seven years he sailed on the *Friendship;* then he became part owner of a vessel engaged in trade with the West Indies.

From this time on young Paul succeeded in everything that he undertook. He made a great deal of money, but that alone did not satisfy him. He studied hard, learned to speak French and Spanish readily, and managed to make friends with the best people in all the ports at which he touched.

A Virginia Mansion Party

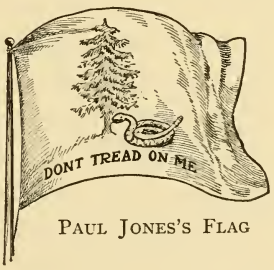
When William Jones died, Paul, then twenty-six years old, was at last willing to try life on the Virginia estate. At that time he was well known to all the families of wealth and fashion living at colonial ports from New York to Charleston, and the old mansion which he had inherited at once opened its hospitable doors to the gay society of Virginia.

He also began to take an active part in the more serious affairs which concerned his country. He became deeply interested in the questions then on all lips, "What will the British do next?" "What ought *we* to do?" He attended the Virginia legislature and heard Patrick Henry's great speeches, and

he made the acquaintance of Washington and Thomas Jefferson. "If you ever need my services on the sea, I am ready," said Paul Jones to these leaders of the Revolution.

When the colonists began to collect their largest boats into something that could be called a navy, Jones was made a first lieutenant. His Virginia friends had tried hard to have him appointed captain. When told that instead of being captain he was only a first lieutenant, he manfully replied: "I am here to serve the cause of human rights; not to promote the fortunes of Paul Jones."

The first squadron of our little navy consisted of four ships, and of these the first to be made ready was the *Alfred*. From the mast-head of this vessel Paul Jones flung out the first American flag that ever flew from a war-ship. Our beautiful stars and stripes had not yet been adopted. Jones's flag was of yellow silk, with a pine tree, and a rattlesnake coiled at the roots, and bore the motto, "Don't tread on me!"



PAUL JONES'S FLAG

The little fleet set sail in February, 1776, for Fort Nassau, on one of the Bahama Islands, and succeeded in capturing four small English boats, with cannon and other military stores. But the most important result was that it convinced the colonists that Paul

Jones was a man to command a vessel. This short cruise was the last he ever made when he was not in charge himself.

He was given command of the *Providence*, and cruised along the coast from Bermuda to Nova Scotia. In six weeks he captured sixteen English boats and burned three fishing smacks, put ashore at a Nova Scotia port and freed several Americans whom the English held prisoners, and brought back a boat loaded with salt fish. He considered this a good six weeks' work.

Sad news greeted him when he returned from this eventful trip. A party of English and American Tories, under Lord Dunmore, had completely ruined Jones's Virginia plantation. They had burned the buildings, killed the stock, destroyed fruit trees and crops, and carried off all his slaves.

But Paul Jones could be a hero under all circumstances. "This is a part of the fortunes of war," he calmly said, when told what had happened. "I accept the animosity of Lord Dunmore as a compliment to my devotion to the cause of liberty. I have now no fortune left but my sword."

Not long after this, Congress summoned Jones to Philadelphia for his advice on naval matters. The victorious young captain proposed such a daring scheme that it startled all the members. "It is not enough," said he, "that we chase and capture English vessels on our own coast. We must cross the ocean and fight the English in their own waters."

About this time Lafayette arrived from France, determined to help the Americans in their fight for liberty. He told the colonists that Captain Jones was right; that to attack the English in English waters would show them that it was not alone in America that Americans were to be feared.

At length the plan was agreed to, and Jones was given a new ship, the *Ranger*. The very day on which Congress adopted our flag, June 14, 1777, the command of the *Ranger* was given to Captain Paul Jones. "That flag and I are twins," said Jones. "We cannot be parted in life or in death. So long as we can float we shall float together. If we must sink, we shall go down as one."

The young women of Portsmouth, New Hampshire, where the *Ranger* was built, set to work to make a flag for Captain Jones's vessel. They cut up their best silk gowns for the red, white, and blue stripes, and the thirteen white stars were made from the bridal dress of a girl who had just married an army officer. As we follow Paul Jones's fortunes, we shall learn the history of this flag.

Captain Jones received orders to have his ship in readiness to set sail for France at a moment's notice. Congress was breathlessly awaiting news from New York state. Would Burgoyne succeed, or would General Schuyler's carefully laid schemes end in the defeat of the British? At last the joyful news arrived. Burgoyne had surrendered at Saratoga.

Horsemen galloped with the tidings in every direction, riding day and night, eating their meals in the saddle, stopping not a moment for storms. On the sea, the *Ranger*, with every inch of sail straining in the wind, was flying to France to carry the news to that friendly nation. Never before had the sailors on board the *Ranger* had such a wild passage as this. Captain Jones was himself on deck from eighteen to twenty hours out of every twenty-four. In little more than thirty days the *Ranger* anchored in the river Loire. As she sailed into port, flying the new American stars and stripes, the French vessels welcomed her with a salute of guns. Thus it happened that the flag made of the dresses of the Portsmouth young women was the first American flag ever saluted by the guns of an European navy.

With all possible speed Jones hastened to Paris, and placed in the hands of Benjamin Franklin the important dispatches from Washington and Jefferson.

Captain Jones had hoped to procure in France a vessel larger than the little *Ranger*, but in this he was disappointed. So, determined to make up in daring what he lacked in size, he put out from the French coast. He had one or two successful encounters with the English at small ports; then he met the *Drake*, a British sloop-of-war, in the Irish Channel.

"What ship is this?" asked the *Drake*.

"The American Continental ship *Ranger*," was the reply. "Come on; we are waiting for you."

A fierce battle followed. The *Drake* was much larger than the *Ranger*, and carried more guns, but it did not have a genius like Paul Jones in command. At the end of an hour the crippled *Drake* surrendered. Thus the little *Ranger* was the first American vessel to cross the ocean and capture an enemy. It was a great blow to England's pride to find that one of her war sloops could be beaten by a smaller boat belonging to the "Yankee" navy.

Captain Jones and his men towed their prize to France. The French king could scarcely believe that the little *Ranger* had accomplished so much. As his country was about to engage again in war with England, he thought it would be wise to help the Americans as much as possible. So it came about that a larger vessel was given to Jones by order of King Louis XVI.

Benjamin Franklin had taken a great liking to the young naval hero, while Jones felt for Franklin the respect and affection of a son. The captain loved to talk with the good doctor, and to read his "Poor Richard's Almanac." "This book," said Jones, "helped to keep up my courage, and make me persevere in my endeavor to get a ship from the French king." In honor of Dr. Franklin, therefore, and of "Poor Richard," Paul Jones named his

French boat, *Le Bon Homme Richard*, or *Good Man Richard.*

With four smaller ships in his squadron, Jones set sail in the *Richard*, flying the flag that had come overseas on the *Ranger.* In the naval history of the world there is nothing to equal the glorious victory of this small fleet. "Paul Jones,"

ENGAGEMENT BETWEEN "LE BON HOMME RICHARD" AND THE "SERAPIS"

said an English writer, "succeeded in alarming and insulting our coasts with a contemptible little squadron more than the whole navy of France had been able to do."

Jones soon seized two English vessels. Then he won his greatest victory. The *Richard* met the British ship *Serapis* on the evening of September 23, 1779. At first the English commander thought that he had to deal with a French man-of-war, but

with the aid of a glass he made out that it was a stranger. "It is probably Paul Jones," he remarked. "If so, there is work ahead."

There was indeed work ahead; for from seven o'clock until eleven the battle raged. The thunder of cannon and the sharp report of muskets rang out on the night air. There was little wind and the sea was calm. The moon shone so bright that it was almost as light as day. Wherever the firing was hottest Jones was to be seen, giving his commands in English and in French, for part of his crew were Frenchmen; cheering forward his men, now in one language, now in the other. "When Commodore Jones sprang on the quarter-deck," said one of his sailors afterwards, "every one who saw his example or heard his voice became as much a hero as himself. The commodore had but to look at a man to make him brave."

Hour after hour passed in the smoke and confusion of battle. At one time it seemed as if the *Richard* could no longer withstand the terrific fire of the enemy's guns. "Are you willing to surrender?" shouted the English captain. Little did he know the grim determination of Paul Jones, who had resolved to win this battle or go down with his ship. In a steady voice Jones called back: "I have only just begun to fight!"

Both ships were now on fire, and the men at the pumps were working with all their might to keep

the flames under control. At last, by the greatest skill and daring, Jones brought the *Richard* alongside the *Serapis*, and with his own hands lashed the

JOHN PAUL JONES BOARDING THE "SERAPIS"

two ships together. His hat fell overboard. Another was handed him, but he replied: "Never mind the hat, boys. I'll fight this out in my scalp."

Still the cannon boomed, still the muskets did

their deadly work. Some of the bravest of Jones's men now managed to get aboard the *Serapis*. One by one the English gunners were shot down, and at last the brave English commander was forced to surrender.

The *Richard* had been so terribly damaged that she was fast sinking. Jones therefore removed his wounded men to the *Serapis*, and then watched in silence and grief the steady settling of the good *Richard* in its watery grave. Slowly, noiselessly, her decks strewn with the dead who had fallen in battle, *Le Bon Homme Richard* sank from sight.

"To our dead, I gave the good old ship for their coffin," said Captain Jones, "and in her they found a sublime sepulcher. The very last that mortal eyes ever saw of *Le Bon Homme Richard* was the defiant waving of her unconquered flag as she went down!" One of the greatest victories in naval history had been won. It is the only time that an English war-ship was ever beaten by a vessel not more than two thirds its strength.

Jones succeeded in getting his battered *Serapis* from Flamborough Head to Holland, without being overtaken by the English. He then went to France, where he became the hero of the hour. King Louis presented him with a gold-mounted sword, and when he returned Congress gave him a gold medal. The American army was cheered and encouraged by such splendid support on the sea.

Jones tried by every means in his power to collect another squadron. But America was too poor to furnish the vessels needed, and France was too busy fighting England on her own account. In October, 1780, therefore, he brought to America the *Ariel*, loaded with a cargo of arms and ammunition.

Paul Jones had now been connected with the American navy for a little more than five years, and he had become famous not only in his own country but throughout Europe. The war ended before the gallant captain had a chance to fight another battle. Congress showed its confidence in her hero by sending him to France and to England on matters of great importance connected with the government.

A few years later when Russia was at war with the Turks, she asked Paul Jones to serve as rear admiral in her navy. He at length consented, but declared: "I can never renounce the glorious title of citizen of the United States." In this conflict Jones gave fresh proof of his ability, but he left the Russian navy in broken health.

Jones was five feet seven inches tall, and of slender build. As he lived almost his entire life on the sea, his complexion was bronzed. His eyes were large, black, and piercing; his voice, so powerful on shipboard, was beautifully soft and musical in ordinary conversation. He spent the remainder of his life in Paris, where he was greatly esteemed and

beloved. He was invited to the king's palace, and entertained by the nobility. When he died, at the early age of forty-five, his death was mourned by America and France. "The Father of our Navy" was laid to rest in the cemetery for foreign Protestants in Paris, but his body was brought back to this country in 1906, and buried with every honor at Annapolis.

THINGS TO REMEMBER

John Paul Jones was the first great hero of the American navy.

His ship, the *Ranger*, carried across the ocean, in 1777, the first American flag ever saluted by the guns of an European navy.

The French king, desiring to help America defeat England, gave Jones a vessel larger than the *Ranger*. Jones named it *Le Bon Homme Richard — Good Man Richard.*

Captain Jones's capture of the English *Serapis* was one of the most remarkable victories in the naval history of the world.

Map Work. — Locate Nassau, Flamborough Head.

XXVIII. GILBERT MOTIER DE LAFAYETTE

Born 1757 — Died 1834

God lives and reigns ! He built and lent
The heights for Freedom's battlement
Where floats her flag in triumph still.

Fold up the banners ! Smelt the guns !
Love rules. Her gentler purpose runs.
— THOMPSON'S " The High Tide at Gettysburg."

ANY one who sacrifices personal pleasure and comfort to help those in trouble does a noble thing. This is exactly what the young Frenchman, Marquis de Lafayette, did when he came to America to help the colonists in their effort to free themselves from King George's tyranny.

Lafayette was the son of an old and honored family and heir to a large fortune. He lived a happy life, surrounded by luxury, in a chateau that nestled among the beautiful hills of France. The love of liberty and the desire to help those in need were characteristics which he early showed. When he was seven or eight years old, the farmers near his mountain home complained of a great gray wolf that broke into the sheepfold at night and killed the

lambs. One day the boy was found roaming alone in the forest. "I am looking for that wolf," said he, "for I mean to kill it."

His father died in battle a few weeks before Lafayette was born, and his mother brought him up with great care. When he was sent to Paris to be educated, he was presented at court, but the pomp and show of life among the nobility did not attract him. He longed for the freedom of the forests, and dreamed that he would some day help to make life simpler and more independent. That dream came true.

MARQUIS DE LAFAYETTE
From a portrait about 1825

He was only nineteen when he heard of the struggle of the American colonists with the mother country. "France ought to aid the Americans with money and firearms," said the young enthusiast, "and we men should help them fight."

Lafayette never wasted time in talking about a thing that needed to be done — he fell to work and did it. Instead of remaining at home, contenting himself with saying, "What a fine thing it would be for some of us to take a hand in that war!" he

fitted out a ship at his own expense, and sailed for America to offer his services to Congress.

This had been no easy task, for Lafayette's family seriously opposed his going, all except his brave, devoted wife, who sympathized with his high purpose. When the king heard that the brilliant Marquis de Lafayette and a number of his friends were planning to go to America, he forbade their leaving France. So Lafayette was really obliged to run away from his own country, in order to help America. He managed to escape from French waters without being discovered, and his ship anchored off the coast of South Carolina in the spring of 1777.

Washington saw from the first that here was a young man after his own heart. The commander in chief was a good judge of human nature, and he recognized the sincerity, and ability of this Frenchman who was so eager to help the cause of liberty. The friendship between these two men is one of the most beautiful in history.

Lafayette was appointed a major general, and entered with enthusiasm upon his hard duties. He served without pay, and from his own fortune furnished clothing and camp outfits for many of the poor patriots. He wrote back to France concerning the division he commanded: "It is weak in point of numbers; it is almost naked, and I must make both clothes and recruits. I do not want to disap-

point the confidence that the Americans have so kindly placed in me."

His first active service was at the battle of Brandywine, not many months after his arrival. General Howe and Lord Cornwallis, with eighteen thousand British troops, advanced upon Philadelphia, then the capital of the country. Washington took up his position at Chadd's Ford, on Brandywine Creek, where a desperate battle was fought. While it was at its height, Lafayette saw that the Americans were losing ground. He flung himself from his horse, and sword in hand rushed forward, cheering the soldiers on to still greater effort. A British bullet wounded him in the leg, so that he had to remount his horse, but he would not leave the front of battle. Washington's army, however, was no match in numbers for the British, and the Americans were finally driven back.

On the battlefield of Brandywine a monument has been erected by the citizens and school children of Chester County, Pennsylvania, and the inscription reads: "On the rising ground, a short distance south of this spot, Lafayette was wounded at the battle of Brandywine, September 11, 1777."

"The honor to have mingled my blood with that of many other American soldiers on the heights of the Brandywine," said Lafayette, "has been to me a source of pride and delight."

Not a soldier in the whole American army re-

joiced more at Burgoyne's defeat at Saratoga than did Lafayette. Shortly afterward he received a letter from Paris which delighted his generous heart. He hastened to Washington, threw his arms around the surprised commander's neck, and exclaimed: "The king of France acknowledges the independence of America, and has determined upon armed interference in your behalf!" In the shouts of joy from the weary soldiers at this good news, there was plenty of cheering for Lafayette as well as for his king.

LAFAYETTE MONUMENT, WASHINGTON, D.C.

In the battle at Monmouth, New Jersey, which Washington won in spite of the greatest difficulties, the Frenchman's conduct was heroic, and called forth high praise from his commander.

But it was in the last campaign of the war, the siege that ended in the surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown, that Lafayette most distinguished himself. For months he had been pressed by Cornwallis, who had been chased across North Carolina by that splendid little army under Greene. At last Cornwallis intrenched himself at Yorktown. "Now," said he, "the boy cannot escape me." But

fate had decreed that Cornwallis should not escape "the boy."

Very skillfully had Lafayette aided in forcing Cornwallis into this trap, and with equal skill he held him there until Washington had time to bring his army of American and French troops down from New York. Then, with the help of the French squadron in Chesapeake Bay, Washington forced Cornwallis to surrender.

When Lafayette returned home after peace was declared, he carried with him the love and gratitude of every American. He had left France followed by the anger of his family and king, but now that he came back a distinguished general, a close friend of Washington, and loved by the American nation, his countrymen showered honors upon him.

Throughout the remainder of his life, Lafayette devoted himself to the cause of liberty in his native country. But he was destined to suffer much; for his high ideals of patriotism and liberty were misunderstood. He even languished for years in prison, but before his death he was once more honored at home as he deserved to be.

When he was an old man, he came again to the country for which he had so nobly given his youthful services. At the grave of Washington tears streamed down his cheeks as he recalled all that Washington's love and trust had meant to him. Greene, Marion, Morgan, and Schuyler were all dead;

Lafayette was the only living major general of the Revolution. He had the pleasure of meeting some of the old soldiers who fought under him, and they were overjoyed to see their commander again.

Lafayette visited all the largest American cities and was received everywhere with greetings of welcome and affection. As a token of appreciation, Congress voted him two hundred thousand dollars and a large tract of land in Florida, and when he was ready to return, ordered that a new frigate, named the *Brandywine* in his honor, should carry him to France. He died in Paris ten years later. This country will never forget its debt of gratitude to Lafayette and to his fellow-countrymen, who on land and sea aided the Americans to win the victory in the Revolutionary War.

Things to Remember

Lafayette was a young French nobleman, who gave up a life of luxury to help America in her struggle for liberty.

He was one of Washington's most trusted officers and a close personal friend.

He cut off the retreat of Cornwallis from Yorktown and held him in the trap until Washington's army arrived from the north.

Then, with the aid of the French squadron in Chesapeake Bay, the Americans forced Cornwallis to surrender.

PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY

KEY

ā *as in* fate
à *as in* hat
ä *as in* father
ą *as in* tall
â *as in* care
å *as in* soa
ę *as in* we
ě *as in* yet
ē *as in* her
ī *as in* fine
ĭ *as in* tin
ō *as in* tone
ŏ *as in* hot
ó *as in* orb
o͞o *as in* soon
o͝o *as in* foot
ū *as in* tune
ŭ *as in* hut
û *as in* burr
ou *as in* out
oi *as in* oil
ñ *as* ny

Albemarle, ăl′bē-märl.
Algonquin, ăl-gŏn′kĭn.
Alleghany, ăl′ē-gȧ-nĭ.
André, än′drā.
Annapolis, ăn-năp′ō-lĭs.
Arkansas, är′kȧn-są.
Armada, är-mä′dȧ.
Americus Vespucius, ȧ-mĕr′ĭ-cŭs vĕs-pū′shŭs.

Bahama, bȧ-hā′mȧ.
Balboa, băl-bō′ȧ.
Bobadilla, bō-bȧ-dēl′yȧ.
Bonne Homme Richard, bŏn ŏm rē-shär′.
Burgoyne, bûr-goin′.

Cabot, kăb′ŏt.
Canonchet, kȧ-nŏn′tchĕt.
Canonicus, kȧ-nŏn′ĭ-cŭs.
Cartier, kär-tyā′.
Castile, kăs-tēl′.
Cathay, kăth-ā′.
Cayuga, kā-yo͞o′gȧ.
Ceylon, sĭ-lŏn′.
Champlain, shăm-plān′.
Chesapeake, tchĕs′ȧ-pēk.
Chickahominy, tchĭk-ȧ-hŏm′ĭ-nĭ.

Coligny, kō-lēn-yē′.
Cornwallis, kôrn-wą̈l′ĭs.
Cortez, kôr′tĕz.
Crèvecœur, krāv-kēr.

Darien, dā′rē-ĕn.
Duquesne, do͞o-kān′.

Eutaw, ū′tą.

Faneuil, fŭn′ĕl.
Fernando de Soto, fēr-nän′dō dā sō′tō.
Flamborough, flăm′bŏ-rō.
Frontenac, frôn-tē-nāk′.

Gaspe, găs-pā′.
Genoa, jĕn′ŏ-wȧ.
Guiana, ghĭ-ä′nȧ.
Guinea, gĭn′ĕ.

Hayti, hā′tĭ.
Herkimer, hēr′kĭ-mēr.
Hochelaga, hŏk-ĕ-lä′gȧ.
Huguenot, hū′ghē-nŏt.

Illinois, ĭl-ĭ-noi′.
Iroquois, ĭr′ŏ-kwą.

Jacques, zhăk.
Jean, zhän.
Jogues, zhōgh.
Joliet, zhō-lyā′.

Labrador, lăb′rȧ-dôr.
Lafayette, lä-fȧ-yĕt′.
La Salle, lȧ-săl′.
Le Bœuf, lĕ bĕf′.
Leif, līf.
Leyden, lī′dĕn.
Louisiana, lo͞o-ē-zĭ-ă′nȧ.

Magellan, mȧ-jĕl′ȧn.
Marquette, mär-kĕt′.
Massasoit, măs-ȧ-soit′.
Matagorda, măt-ȧ-gôr′dȧ.
McCrea, mȧ-krā′.
Michigan, mĭsh′ĭ-gȧn.
Minuit, min′o͞o-ĭt.
Missouri, mĭs-o͞o′rĭ.
Mobile, mō-bēl′.
Montana, mŏn-tă′nȧ.
Montcalm, mōnt′käm′.
Montreal, mŏn-trĭ-ȧl′.

Narragansett, năr-ȧ-găn′sĕt.
Narvaez, när-vä′eth.
Newfoundland, no͞o′fŭnd-lȧnd.
Niña, nēn′yä.
Nottinghamshire, nŏt′ing-ėm-shēr.

Oglethorpe, ōgl′thôrp.
Oneida, ō-nī′dȧ.
Oriskany, ōr-ĭs′kȧn-ĭ.
Oswego, ŏs-wē′gō.

Palos, pä′lōs.
Pamlico, păm′lĭ-kō.
Panama, păn-ă-mäh′.
Pecksuot, pĕck′sū-ŏt.
Philippine, fĭl′ĭ-pēn.
Pineda, pē-nā′dä.
Pinta, pēn′tä.
Pizarro, pē-zä′rō.
Plymouth, plĭm′ŭth.
Pocahontas, pō-kȧ-hŏn′tȧs.
Ponce de Leon, pōn-thā dā lā-ōn.
Potomac, pô-tō′mȧc.
Powhatan, pow-hȧ-tăn′.
Presque Isle, prĕs kēl′.

Quebec, kwē-bĕk′.

Raleigh, rą′lĭ.
Ribault, rē-bō′.
Richelieu, rē-shĕ-lū′.
Roanoke, rō′ȧ-nōk.

St. Augustine, sānt ą′gŭs-tēn.
St. Croix, sānt kroi′.
St. Leger, sānt lĕj′ĕr.
Savannah, sȧ-văn′ȧ.
Schenectady, skē-nĕk′tȧ-dĭ.
Schuyler, skī′lēr.
Schuylkill, sko͞ol′kĭl.
Sebastian, sē-băs′tĭ-ȧn.
Seneca, sĕn′ē-kȧ.
Shackamaxon, shăk-ȧ-măk′son.
Staten, stăt′ĕn.
Steuben, stū′bĕn; German pronunciation, stoi′bĕn.
Stuyvesant, stī′vē-sȧnt.
Swansea, swŏn′sē.

Ticonderoga, tī-kŏn-dē-rō′gȧ.
Toscanelli, tŏs-kȧ-nĕl′lĭ.

Valparaiso, văl-pȧ-rī′zō.
Venango, vē-năn′gō.
Verrazano, vâr-rä-tsä′nō.

Wampanoag, wąm′pȧ-nōg.
Warwick, wąr′ĭk.

INDEX

Acadia, 136, 140.
Adams, John, 259, 296.
Adams, Samuel, life of, 264, 283.
Albany, 118, 219, 316, 324.
"Albany Plan," 220.
Alexandria, 291.
Alfred, 345.
Algonquins, 138.
Alleghany Mountains, 226, 289.
Allegheny River, 226, 289.
Amboy, 214.
America, discovery by Columbus, 12; why so named, 19.
Americus Vespucius, 18, 19.
Amherst, General, 241.
André, Major, 305.
Annapolis, 355.
Arabia, 33.
Arkansas River, 144.
Armada, 47, 49, 56.
Arnold, Benedict, treason of, 305, 323, 325.
Atlantic Ocean, called "Sea of Darkness," 4.
Augusta, Ga., 333.
Avalon, 158.
Aztecs, 21.

Bacon, Nathaniel, life of, 200–209.
"Bacon's Laws," 209.
"Bacon's Rebellion," 209.
Bahama Islands, 12, 345.
Balboa, 23, 24, 43.
Baltimore, founded and named, 164.
Baltimore, life of first Lord, 157–159; life of second Lord, 159–166.
Beacon Hill, 103.
Bemis Heights, battle of, 325.
Bennington, battle of, 321.
Berkeley, William, 201–209.
Bermuda Islands, 346, 365.
Bobadilla, 17.
Boston, founding of, 103.
Boston, resents England's tax, 258.
Boston Common, 266.
Boston Massacre, 266, 267.
Boston Tea Party, 270.
Braddock, 229; his defeat, 231, 293.
Bradford, Governor, 93–97.
Brandywine, battle of, 303, 359.
Brandywine, frigate, 362.
Brookfield, 194.
Brooklyn, 300.
Bunker Hill, battle of, 277–278.
Burgesses, House of, 69, 205, 253.
Burgoyne, General, 316; his defeat, 317–326.

Cabot, John, life of, 32–38.
Cabot, Sebastian, 33, 35, 38.
California, 30, 44.
Calvert, *see* Baltimore.
Cambridge, Mass., 296.
Camden, battle of, 334.
Canada, explored and settled by French, 131–155; conquered by English, 225–248; 316, 324.
Canary Islands, 10.
Canonchet, 196.
Canonicus, 93.
Cape Cod, 89, 114.
Cape Fear, 62.
Cape of Good Hope, 24, 45.
Cape Verde Islands, 129.

Capital, established at New York, 310.
Carteret, Sir George, 126, 127.
Cartier, Jacques, 131–133.
Carver, John, 90.
Catawba River, 338.
Catholics in Maryland, 158–166.
Cayugas, 139.
Chadd's Ford, 359.
Champlain, Lake, discovered and named, 138.
Champlain, Samuel de, life of, 129, 141.
Charles I, King of England, 99, 159, 208.
Charles II, King of England, 123, 172, 208.
Charles V, King of Spain, 26.
Charleston, 184, 340.
Charlestown, 102, 107.
Chesapeake Bay, 62 ; explored by Lord Baltimore, 160, 361.
Chicago River, 152.
Chickahominy River, explored, 64.
Church, Captain Benjamin, 197.
Circumnavigation of globe, first, 24 ; second, 45.
Claiborne, William, 161.
Clinton, General, 308.
Clinton, Sir Henry, 333.
Coligny, 134.
Colonial Congress at Albany, 219.
Columbus, life of, 2–19 ; discovers America, 12 ; later voyages, 14–18, 30, 31, 33.
Concord, battle of, 276.
Congress, 250.
Congress, First Continental, 258, 272 ; Second Continental, 261, 273 ; Provincial, 272.
Constitution of the United States, 223, 309.
Continental Congress, 221.
Convention, Federal, 309.
Cornwallis, Lord, 306–308.
Cortez, 21, 24.
Cowpens, battle of, 337.
"Cradle of Liberty," 264.
Crèvecœur, Fort, 148.
Croatoan, 56.
Cuba, 20, 26, 247.

Dan River, 338, 339.
Dare, Virginia, 55.
Darien, Isthmus of, 23.
Dawes, William, 274.
Declaration of Independence, 221, 280.
Deerfield, 194.
Delaware, 182.
Delaware River, 120, 172, 174, 177, 301.
Delft Haven, 87.
Division of New World by Pope, 129.
Dorchester Heights, 298.
Drake, Francis, life of, 39–49.
Dunmore, Lord, 260, 346.
Dutch in New Netherland, 110–128 ; surrender of New Netherland to English, 124.
Dutch East India Company, 111.
Dutch West India Company, 124.
Duxbury, 97.

East Indian Islands, 12, 24.
East River, 300.
Eliot, John, 191.
Elizabeth, Queen of England, 39–49, 50–59.
Endicott, John, 100.
English driven out of Boston, 297–299.
English Navigators, 33, 39, 51, 60.
Erie, Lake, explored, 147.
Eutaw Springs, battle of, 340.

Fairfax, Lord, 287, 288, 308.
Faneuil Hall, 264.

Federal Convention, 309.
Ferdinand and Isabella, King and Queen of Spain, 8, 9, 16, 17, 18, 31.
Ferguson, Major, 334.
Financial difficulties after Revolution, 310–311.
First Continental Congress, 258, 272.
Fiske, John, 313.
"Five Nations," 139, 155.
Flag, American, first hoisted, 322; first carried across Atlantic, 347.
Flamborough Head, 353.
Florida, discovery of, 22, 25; conquest of, 26–30; purchased by England from Spain, 247.
Fort Amsterdam, 118.
Fort Crèvecœur, 148.
Fort Duquesne, 228, 235, 290, 293.
Fort Edward, 318, 319, 320.
Fort Frontenac, 146, 235.
Fort Nassau, 118, 345.
Fort Necessity, 229, 291.
Fort Orange, 118.
Fort Pitt, 235, 293.
Fort St. Louis, 153.
Fort Stanwix, 323.
Fort Ticonderoga, 233, 297, 316.
Fort William Henry, 232.
Fox River, 143.
France, alliance with, 304; surrenders American possessions to England, 247.
Francis I, King of France, 130.
Franklin, Benjamin, life of, 210–224; "Poor Richard's Almanac," 217; discoveries in electricity, 218, 219; 265, 280, 304, 309.
French and Indian War, 288.
French navigators, 130, 131, 135, 145.
Frontenac, Governor of Canada, 146.
Fry, Colonel, 290.
Fundy, Bay of, explored, 136.
Fur trade in America, 118, 137, 140.

Gage, General, 273, 279.
Gates, General, 324, 333, 334.
General Court, 106, 107.
Genoa, 4, 5, 33.
George II, King of England, 181, 182, 241.
George III, King of Great Britain, 250, 256, 258, 278.
Georgia, founding of, 180–188, 341.
German troops in British service, 317.
Germantown, 303.
Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 51.
Goffe, William, 194.
Golden Hind, 44, 45.
Great Meadows, 228, 290.
Green Bay, 143, 144.
Greene, Nathanael, 306, 330–341.
Griffin, 147.
Groton, 194.
Guilford, 338; battle of, 340.

Hadley, 194.
Half Moon, 112–118.
Halifax, 299.
Hancock, John, 272, 273, 280.
Harvard College, founding of, 125.
Harvard, John, 107.
Havana, 26.
Hawkins, John, 40, 48.
Hayti, 16, 20.
Henrietta Maria, Queen of England, 160.
Henry IV, King of France, 135.
Henry VII, King of England, 33.
Henry, Patrick, life of, 249–263.
Herkimer, General, 322.
Hessians, *see* German troops.
Hochelaga, 132.

Holland, refuge for Pilgrims, 86.
House of Burgesses, 253.
Houses of Dutch, 121.
Houses of Pilgrims, 95.
Houses of Virginia and Maryland planters, 164.
Howe, General, 298, 316.
Hudson Bay, explored, 116.
Hudson, Henry, life of, 110–118.
Hudson River, discovery of, 113; explored, 114, 300, 316.
Huguenots, 134.
Huron, Lake, discovery of, 138; explored, 147.
Hurons, 137.
Hutchinson, Governor, 267.

Illinois, 145.
Illinois River, 144, 152.
Incas, 21.
India, 5, 7, 112.
Indians, 12, 21; appearance and manner of life, 71–82; treaty with Pilgrims, 93; famous treaty with William Penn, 174; war with New England colonists, 193–198, 289, 320.
Iroquois, 127, 138.
Isabella, Queen of Spain, 8, 9, 16, 17, 18, 31.

James I, King of England, 62, 79, 85, 99.
James River, how named, 62; 114.
Jamestown, founding of, 60–70; first legislative body in America meets at, 69; destroyed by fire, 207.
Jesuit missionaries, 142.
John, King of Portugal, 8.
Johnson, Sir William, 232.
"Join or die," 219.
Joliet, 143.
Jones, John Paul, life of, 342–355.
Joques, Father, 143.

Keith, Sir William, 215.
Kent Island, 162.
King Philip's War, 189–199.
Kings Mountain, battle of, 335, 336.
Kingston, on Lake Ontario, 146.
Kingston, Rhode Island, 194.
Knox, General, 297.

Labrador, 34, 36.
Lacrosse, 75.
Lafayette, Marquis de, 306, 347; life of, 356–362.
Lake Champlain, 316.
Lake Ontario, 316.
La Salle, Robert de, life of, 142, 155.
Le Bœuf, 289.
Lee, Major Henry, 296, 337.
Lexington, battle of, 274, 275, 368.
Line of demarcation, 129.
London Company, 62, 87.
Longfellow, 296.
Long Island, battle of, 300.
Long Wharf, Boston, 266.
Louis XIV, King of France, 146, 153.
Louis XVI, King of France, 349.
Louisiana, claimed for France by La Salle, 152.
Louisburg, 234.
Louisville, 145.

McCrea, Jenny, 320.
Mackinac, 150.
Mackinac, Strait of, 143.
Magellan, enters and names Pacific Ocean, 23; one of his ships sails around the world, 24, 43.
Magellan, Strait of, 22, 43.
Malay Islands, 41.
Manhattan Island, 117, 119.
Manufactures forbidden in American colonies, 256.
Mariner's Compass, 3.
Marion, General, 306, 334.

Marlborough, 194.
Marquette, 143.
Maryland, founding of, 157–166; dispute over boundary line, 166.
Mason and Dixon's Line, 166.
Massachusetts, 100; founding of colony, 101.
Massachusetts Assembly, 266.
Massachusetts Bay Company, 101.
Massasoit, 92, 93, 95.
Matagorda Bay, 154.
Mayflower, 87–92, 101.
Mayflower Compact, 90.
Medfield, 194.
Mexico, Conquest of, 20, 21.
Mexico, Gulf of, 152, 153, 154.
Michigan, Lake, explored, 143, 147, 148, 150.
Minuit, Peter, 119.
Mississippi River, first discovery of, 25; explored, 28; description of, 28; discovered by French, 143; explored by La Salle, 145, 289.
Mississippi Valley, claimed for France, 152.
Missouri River, 144.
Mobile Bay, 28.
Mohawk River, 316.
Mohawks, 139.
Monmouth, battle of, 360.
Monongahela River, 226, 289.
Montcalm, Louis, life of, 225–238.
Montreal, how named, 132; founding of, 142, 316.
Morgan, Daniel, 296, 325, 337.
Morris, Robert, 302, 303.
Mount Hope, 197.
Mount Vernon, how named, 286; becomes George Washington's home, 291.
Mulberry Grove, 341.

Narragansetts, 93, 195.
Narvaez, 25.
Navy in Revolution, 342.
Necessity, Fort, 228.
New Albion, 44.
New Amsterdam, 124.
Newcastle, 172.
Newfoundland, 34; fisheries at, 36, 105, 140.
New France, 146, 238.
New Jersey, how named, 127; settled by Quakers, 169, 171; 316.
New Netherland, surrendered to English, 124.
New Orleans, 247.
New York, how named, 124, 126, 316.
New York City, chosen national capital, 310.
Niagara, 146.
Nichols, Colonel, 123.
Niña, 10, 14.
North Carolina, 54, 59.
Northmen, 71.
Northwest Passage, search for, 7–18, 33–36, 111–116, 132, 143, 145.

Oglethorpe, James, life of, 180–188.
Ohio Company, 226.
Ohio River, discovered by La Salle, 145; 226; 290.
Oneidas, 139.
Onondagas, 139.
Ontario, Lake, discovery of, 138; explored, 145; 231.
Orange, Fort, 117.
Oregon, 44.
Oriskany, battle of, 322.
Oswego, 231, 322.

Pacific Ocean, discovery of, 23, 43.
Palos, 9, 14.
Panama, Isthmus of, 42, 135.
Parker, Captain, 274.
Parliament, 240.

"Parson's Cause," 253.
Pecksuot, 94.
Penn, William, life of, 167–179.
Pennsylvania, founding of, 172.
Philadelphia, 117; named and settled, 173; 258, 299.
Philip II, King of Spain, 39–47.
Philippine Islands, 24, 247.
Pilgrims, 83–97.
Pineda, 25.
Pinta, 10, 13, 14.
Pitcairn, Major, 274.
Pitt, William, 235, 239, 240, 256, 327.
Pizarro, 21, 24.
Plains of Abraham, 235, 244.
Plymouth Colony, 90–97.
Pocahontas, 66, 71–82.
Ponce de Leon, 21, 25.
"Poor Richard's Almanac," 217, 349.
Porto Rico, 16, 20, 22.
Port Royal, 136.
Portsmouth, N.H., 347.
Portugal, 2, 4, 8, 20.
Portuguese Navigators, 4, 20.
Potatoes, introduced into England, 57.
Potomac River, 62, 161.
Powhatan, 65, 77, 79.
Prescott, Colonel, 278.
Presque Isle, 289.
Prince Henry of Portugal, 4, 6, 7.
Princeton, battle of, 302.
Providence, 346.
Provincetown, 89.
Provincial Congress, 272.
Puritans, 98–109.

Quakers, 161; religion, manners, and customs, 167–169; founding of Pennsylvania by, 167–179.
Quebec, founding of, 136–141; captured by English, 137, 246.

Raleigh, Sir Walter, life of, 50–59.
Ranger, 347.
Read, Deborah, 215, 216.
Representative government, 251.
Revere, Paul, 274.
Ribault, Jean, 134.
Richelieu Island, 139.
Roanoke, colony, 54.
Rolfe, John, 79, 80, 81.
Roxbury, 105, 274.
Russia, 354.

Sackett's Harbor, 333.
Salem, founding of, 100.
Salisbury, 339.
Samoset, 92.
San Domingo, 16, 18.
San Francisco, 44.
San Salvador, 12, 14.
Santa Maria, 10, 13.
Saratoga, 320; battle of, 325.
Savannah, founding of, 184; 333.
Savannah River, explored, 184.
Schenectady, 328.
Schools, 107, 164, 202.
Schuyler, Philip, life of, 315–329.
Schuylkill River, 172.
Scrooby, 169.
"Sea of Darkness," 4.
Second Continental Congress, 261, 273.
Senecas, 139.
Separatists, 85.
Serapis, 351–353.
Shackamaxon, 174.
Shipbuilding, 105, 120.
Silk thread, production of, 186.
Skraelings, 89.
Slavery, 41, 80.
Smith, Captain John, life of, 60–70, 84.
"Sons of Liberty," 265.
Soto, Fernando de, life of, 20–31.
South America, discovery of, 16, 18.

Southampton, 87, 88.
South Carolina, 182, 187, 333, 340.
Spain, 2, 8, 10, 18, 20, 46.
Spanish navigators, 20, 25.
Spartanburg, 337.
Squanto, 92, 93.
Stamp Act, 250.
Standish, Miles, life of, 83–97.
Stark, John, 321.
Staten Island, 300.
Steuben, Baron von, 304.
Stillwater, 325.
Studley, 252.
Stuyvesant, Peter, life of, 119–128.
St. Augustine, 22, 30.
St. Clair, General, 318.
St. John's Church, Richmond, 259.
St. John's River, founding of colony on, 134, 316.
St. Lawrence, Gulf of, how named, 131.
St. Lawrence River, 131.
St. Leger, Colonel, 316, 323, 324.
St. Louis, 153.
St. Mary's, 161.
Swansea, 193.
Swedes, in Pennsylvania, 172.

Tampa Bay, 26.
Tarleton, General, 337.
Taxation of colonies, 250, 258.
Tea ships, 270.
Texas, 154.
Thanksgiving Day, first celebration of, 95.
Three Rivers, 139.
Ticonderoga, first battle, 138; great battle, 233.
Tobacco, introduced into England, 57; cultivation in America, 80; used in payment of bills, 164.
Tomachichi, 186.
Tonty, Henri de, 146–154.
Tories, 254, 346.
Toscanelli, 5, 7.
Town meetings, 106.
Treaties, with England at Paris, 309.
Treaty, Indian, with Pilgrims, 93; with William Penn, 174; between United States and France, 223.
Trenton, battle of, 302.
Tri-mountain, 103.
Trinity River, 154.
Turks, 4, 61, 354.

United States, 223, 248.
University of Pennsylvania, founded by Benjamin Franklin, 218.

Valladolid, 18.
Valley Forge, 304, 327.
Valparaiso, 44.
Van Rensselaer, Killian, 122, 315.
Venango, 289.
Venice, 4, 33.
Verrazano, 130.
Vespucius, Americus, 18, 19.
Vinland, 7.
Virginia, 54; first settled, 60–70; revolt against England's government, 200–209.
Virginia Company, 158.

Wampanoags, 92, 190.
Wampum, 73, 174.
War, French and Indian, 239.
Washington Elm, 296.
Washington, George, journey through wilderness, 227, 289; with Braddock, 230; 284–314; appointed to command Continental army, 296; captures Boston, 297–299; retreat from Long Island, 300; victories at Trenton and Princeton, 302; President of United States, 310; death, 312.
Washington, Lawrence, 285, 286, 291.

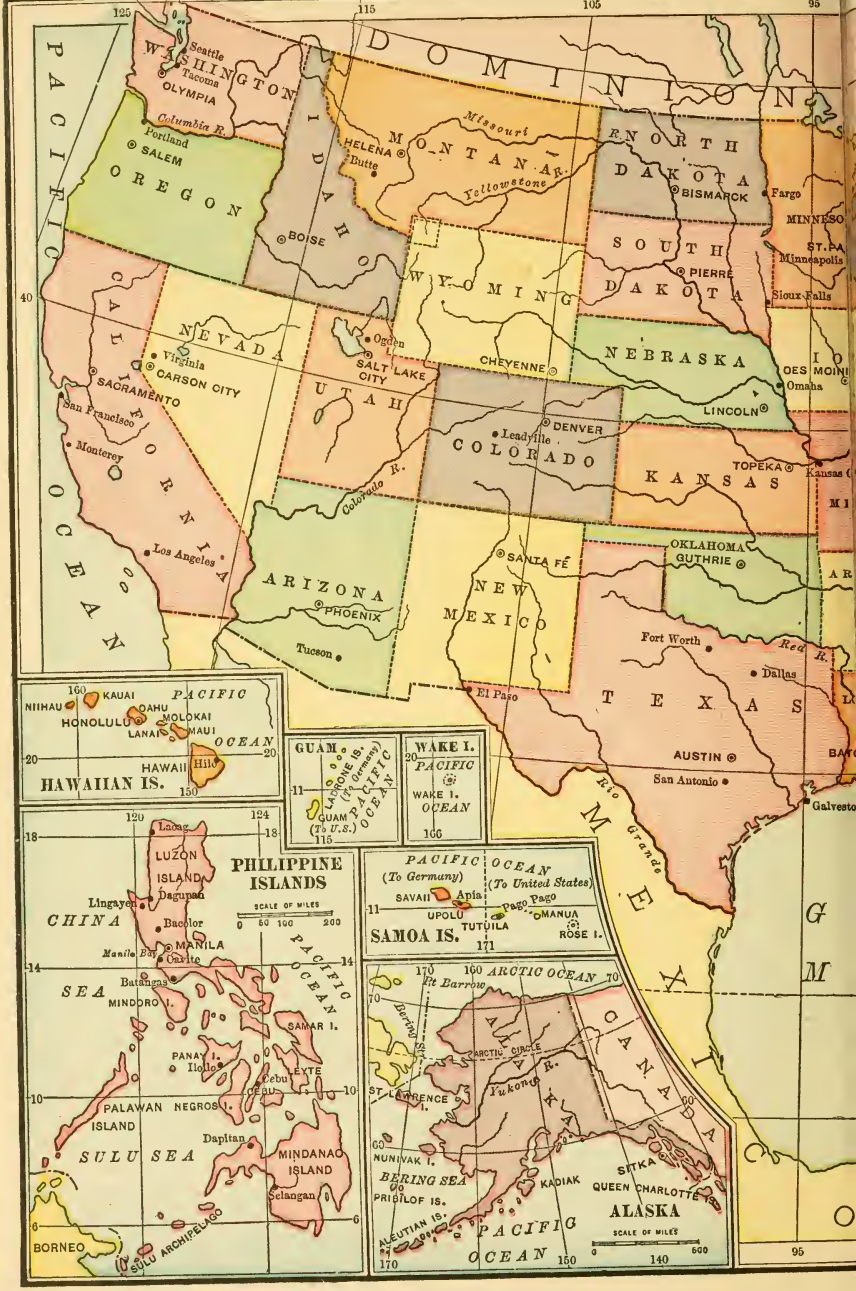
Washington, William, 337.
Watertown, founding of, 105.
Webster, Daniel, 328.
Wesley, John, 186.
West Indies, 30, 105.
White, Captain John, 54.
Wicaco, 173.
William Henry, Fort, 232.
Williams, Roger, 105.
Williamsburg, Va., 261.
Wilmington, 340.
Winslow, Governor, 195.
Winthrop, John, life of, 98–109.
Wisconsin, 143.
Wolfe, James, life of, 239–284.

York, Duke of, 123.
Yorktown, captured by Washington, 306–308, 360.

One copy del. to Cat. Div.

JAN 28 1911

JAN 28 1911


DOMINION
PACIFIC OCEAN
WASHINGTON
Seattle
Tacoma
OLYMPIA
Columbia R.
Portland
SALEM
OREGON
IDAHO
BOISE
MONTANA
HELENA
Butte
Missouri
Yellowstone
NORTH DAKOTA
BISMARCK
Fargo
MINNESO
ST. PA
Minneapolis
SOUTH DAKOTA
PIERRE
Sioux Falls
WYOMING
CHEYENNE
NEBRASKA
Omaha
LINCOLN
NEVADA
Virginia
CARSON CITY
SACRAMENTO
San Francisco
Monterey
Ogden
SALT LAKE CITY
UTAH
DENVER
Leadville
COLORADO
TOPEKA
KANSAS
Kansas
CALIFORNIA
Los Angeles
Colorado R.
OKLAHOMA
GUTHRIE
SANTA FÉ
ARIZONA
PHOENIX
Tucson
NEW MEXICO
Fort Worth
Red R.
Dallas
TEXAS
El Paso
AUSTIN
San Antonio
Galveston
Rio Grande
MEXICO
GULF OF MEXICO
ATLANTIC OCEAN
HAWAIIAN IS.
NIIHAU
KAUAI
OAHU
HONOLULU
MOLOKAI
LANAI
MAUI
HAWAII
Hilo
PACIFIC OCEAN
GUAM
SAIPAN (To Germany)
GUAM (To U.S.)
WAKE I.
WAKE I.
PACIFIC OCEAN
PHILIPPINE ISLANDS
Lingayen
Dagupan
LUZON
ISLAND
Baclor
MANILA
Manila Bay
Cavite
Batangas
MINDORO I.
SAMAR I.
PANAY I.
Iloilo
LEYTE
Cebu
PALAWAN
NEGROS I.
ISLAND
Dapitan
MINDANAO ISLAND
Selangan
SULU SEA
BORNEO
SULU ARCHIPELAGO
CHINA SEA
PACIFIC OCEAN
SCALE OF MILES
0 50 100 200
PACIFIC OCEAN
(To Germany)
(To United States)
SAVAII
Apia
UPOLU
Pago Pago
TUTUILA
MANUA
ROSE I.
SAMOA IS.
ARCTIC OCEAN
Pt Barrow
Barrow
ARCTIC CIRCLE
St. LAWRENCE
Yukon R.
CANADA
NUNIVAK I.
BERING SEA
PRIBILOF IS.
KADIAK
SITKA
QUEEN CHARLOTTE IS.
ALEUTIAN IS.
ALASKA
PACIFIC OCEAN
SCALE OF MILES
0 140 600

85
75
65
CANADA
L. Superior
MICHIGAN
L. Michigan
L. Huron
Detroit
Lake Erie
L. Ontario
St. Lawrence R.
MONTPELIER
VER.
N.H.
MAINE
AUGUSTA
Bangor
Portland
CONCORD
BOSTON
Worcester
MASS.
PROVIDENCE
R.I.
Rochester
Syracuse
Buffalo
NEW YORK
ALBANY
HARTFORD
New Haven
CONN.
WISCONSIN
MADISON
Milwaukee
LANSING
Chicago
Toledo
Wheeling
OHIO
Scranton
PENNSYLVANIA
Pittsburg
HARRISBURG
TRENTON
N.J.
Philadelphia
ILLINOIS
INDIANA
COLUMBUS
Cincinnati
INDIANAPOLIS
WASHINGTON
ANNAPOLIS
DOVER
DEL.
MD.
WEST VIRGINIA
SPRINGFIELD
St. Louis
CHARLESTON
RICHMOND
FRANKFORT
Louisville
Ohio R.
KENTUCKY
VIRGINIA
Norfolk
NASHVILLE
TENNESSEE
RALEIGH
NORTH CAROLINA
Memphis
Wilmington
LITTLE ROCK
SOUTH CAROLINA
COLUMBIA
ATLANTA
GEORGIA
Birmingham
ALABAMA
MISSISSIPPI
Mississippi R.
Charleston
MONTGOMERY
Savannah
JACKSON
TALLAHASSEE
Mobile
New Orleans
Jacksonville
St. Augustine
FLORIDA
ATLANTIC OCEAN
MAP OF THE
UNITED STATES
AND ITS POSSESSIONS
Scale of Miles
0 100 200 300 400 500
NOTE: The maps of Hawaii, Samoa, Guam and Wake Is. same scale as map of Philippine Islands.
BAHAMA ISLANDS
Key West
HAVANA
CUBA
Santiago de Cuba
TROPIC OF CANCER
HAITI
SANTO DOMINGO
PORTO RICO
(To U.S.)
SAN JU
SANTO DOMINGO
PORT AU PRINCE
JAMAICA
KINGSTON
CARIBBEAN SEA
GULF OF MEXICO
C. J. PETERS & SON ENGRS., BOSTO
Longitude West 85 from Greenwich 75

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 011 413 190 8